BayRS Version 14.20

Part No. 308622-14.20 Rev 00
September 2000

600 Technology Park Drive
Billerica, MA 10821-4130

Configuring DLSw Services

NORTEL NETWORKS™

Copyright © 2000 Nortel Networks

All rights reserved. September 2000.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. The statements, configurations, technical data, and recommendations in this document are believed to be accurate and reliable, but are presented without express or implied warranty. Users must take full responsibility for their applications of any products specified in this document. The information in this document is proprietary to Nortel Networks NA Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement and may only be used in accordance with the terms of that license. The software license agreement is included in this document.

Trademarks

NORTEL NETWORKS is a trademark of Nortel Networks.

AN, BCN, BLN, and BN are registered trademarks and Advanced Remote Node, ANH, ARN, ASN, BayRS, BCC, and System 5000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.Restricted Rights Legend

Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013.

Notwithstanding any other license agreement that may pertain to, or accompany the delivery of, this computer software, the rights of the United States Government regarding its use, reproduction, and disclosure are as set forth in the Commercial Computer Software-Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52.227-19.

Statement of Conditions

In the interest of improving internal design, operational function, and/or reliability, Nortel Networks NA Inc. reserves the right to make changes to the products described in this document without notice.

Nortel Networks NA Inc. does not assume any liability that may occur due to the use or application of the product(s) or circuit layout(s) described herein.

Portions of the code in this software product may be Copyright © 1988, Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms of such portions are permitted, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph are duplicated in all such forms and that any documentation, advertising materials, and other materials related to such distribution and use acknowledge that such portions of the software were developed by the University of California, Berkeley. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from such portions of the software without specific prior written permission.

SUCH PORTIONS OF THE SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED “AS IS” AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

In addition, the program and information contained herein are licensed only pursuant to a license agreement that contains restrictions on use and disclosure (that may incorporate by reference certain limitations and notices imposed by third parties).

Nortel Networks NA Inc. Software License Agreement

NOTICE: Please carefully read this license agreement before copying or using the accompanying software or installing the hardware unit with pre-enabled software (each of which is referred to as “Software” in this Agreement). BY COPYING OR USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT ALL OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. THE TERMS EXPRESSED IN THIS AGREEMENT ARE THE ONLY TERMS UNDER WHICH NORTEL NETWORKS WILL PERMIT YOU TO USE THE SOFTWARE. If you do not accept

these terms and conditions, return the product, unused and in the original shipping container, within 30 days of purchase to obtain a credit for the full purchase price.

1. License grant. Nortel Networks NA Inc. (“Nortel Networks”) grants the end user of the Software (“Licensee”) a personal, nonexclusive, nontransferable license: a) to use the Software either on a single computer or, if applicable, on a single authorized device identified by host ID, for which it was originally acquired; b) to copy the Software solely for backup purposes in support of authorized use of the Software; and c) to use and copy the associated user manual solely in support of authorized use of the Software by Licensee. This license applies to the Software only and does not extend to Nortel Networks Agent software or other Nortel Networks software products. Nortel Networks Agent software or other Nortel Networks software products are licensed for use under the terms of the applicable Nortel Networks NA Inc. Software License Agreement that accompanies such software and upon payment by the end user of the applicable license fees for such software.

2. Restrictions on use; reservation of rights. The Software and user manuals are protected under copyright laws. Nortel Networks and/or its licensors retain all title and ownership in both the Software and user manuals, including any revisions made by Nortel Networks or its licensors. The copyright notice must be reproduced and included with any copy of any portion of the Software or user manuals. Licensee may not modify, translate, decompile, disassemble, use for any competitive analysis, reverse engineer, distribute, or create derivative works from the Software or user manuals or any copy, in whole or in part. Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, Licensee may not copy or transfer the Software or user manuals, in whole or in part. The Software and user manuals embody Nortel Networks’ and its licensors’ confidential and proprietary intellectual property. Licensee shall not sublicense, assign, or otherwise disclose to any third party the Software, or any information about the operation, design, performance, or implementation of the Software and user manuals that is confidential to Nortel Networks and its licensors; however, Licensee may grant permission to its consultants, subcontractors, and agents to use the Software at Licensee’s facility, provided they have agreed to use the Software only in accordance with the terms of this license.

3. Limited warranty. Nortel Networks warrants each item of Software, as delivered by Nortel Networks and properly installed and operated on Nortel Networks hardware or other equipment it is originally licensed for, to function substantially as described in its accompanying user manual during its warranty period, which begins on the date Software is first shipped to Licensee. If any item of Software fails to so function during its warranty period, as the sole remedy Nortel Networks will at its discretion provide a suitable fix, patch, or workaround for the problem that may be included in a future Software release. Nortel Networks further warrants to Licensee that the media on which the Software is provided will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of 90 days from the date Software is first shipped to Licensee. Nortel Networks will replace defective media at no charge if it is returned to Nortel Networks during the warranty period along with proof of the date of shipment. This warranty does not apply if the media has been damaged as a result of accident, misuse, or abuse. The Licensee assumes all responsibility for selection of the Software to achieve Licensee’s intended results and for the installation, use, and results obtained from the Software. Nortel Networks does not warrant a) that the functions contained in the software will meet the Licensee’s requirements, b) that the Software will operate in the hardware or software combinations that the Licensee may select, c) that the operation of the Software will be uninterrupted or error free, or d) that all defects in the operation of the Software will be corrected. Nortel Networks is not obligated to remedy any Software defect that cannot be reproduced with the latest Software release. These warranties do not apply to the Software if it has been (i) altered, except by Nortel Networks or in accordance with its instructions; (ii) used in conjunction with another vendor’s product, resulting in the defect; or (iii) damaged by improper environment, abuse, misuse, accident, or negligence. THE FOREGOING WARRANTIES AND LIMITATIONS ARE EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES AND ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Licensee is responsible for the security of its own data and information and for maintaining adequate procedures apart from the Software to reconstruct lost or altered files, data, or programs.

4. Limitation of liability. IN NO EVENT WILL NORTEL NETWORKS OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY COST OF SUBSTITUTE PROCUREMENT; SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES; OR ANY DAMAGES RESULTING FROM INACCURATE OR LOST DATA OR LOSS OF USE OR PROFITS ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF NORTEL NETWORKS HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT

SHALL THE LIABILITY OF NORTEL NETWORKS RELATING TO THE SOFTWARE OR THIS AGREEMENT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID TO NORTEL NETWORKS FOR THE SOFTWARE LICENSE.

5. Government licensees. This provision applies to all Software and documentation acquired directly or indirectly by or on behalf of the United States Government. The Software and documentation are commercial products, licensed on the open market at market prices, and were developed entirely at private expense and without the use of any U.S. Government funds. The license to the U.S. Government is granted only with restricted rights, and use, duplication, or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c)(1) of the Commercial Computer Software—Restricted Rights clause of FAR 52.227-19 and the limitations set out in this license for civilian agencies, and subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause of DFARS 252.227-7013, for agencies of the Department of Defense or their successors, whichever is applicable.

6. Use of software in the European Community. This provision applies to all Software acquired for use within the European Community. If Licensee uses the Software within a country in the European Community, the Software Directive enacted by the Council of European Communities Directive dated 14 May, 1991, will apply to the examination of the Software to facilitate interoperability. Licensee agrees to notify Nortel Networks of any such intended examination of the Software and may procure support and assistance from Nortel Networks.

7. Term and termination. This license is effective until terminated; however, all of the restrictions with respect to Nortel Networks' copyright in the Software and user manuals will cease being effective at the date of expiration of the Nortel Networks copyright; those restrictions relating to use and disclosure of Nortel Networks' confidential information shall continue in effect. Licensee may terminate this license at any time. The license will automatically terminate if Licensee fails to comply with any of the terms and conditions of the license. Upon termination for any reason, Licensee will immediately destroy or return to Nortel Networks the Software, user manuals, and all copies. Nortel Networks is not liable to Licensee for damages in any form solely by reason of the termination of this license.

8. Export and re-export. Licensee agrees not to export, directly or indirectly, the Software or related technical data or information without first obtaining any required export licenses or other governmental approvals. Without limiting the foregoing, Licensee, on behalf of itself and its subsidiaries and affiliates, agrees that it will not, without first obtaining all export licenses and approvals required by the U.S. Government: (i) export, re-export, transfer, or divert any such Software or technical data, or any direct product thereof, to any country to which such exports or re-exports are restricted or embargoed under United States export control laws and regulations, or to any national or resident of such restricted or embargoed countries; or (ii) provide the Software or related technical data or information to any military end user or for any military end use, including the design, development, or production of any chemical, nuclear, or biological weapons.

9. General. If any provision of this Agreement is held to be invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the remainder of the provisions of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect. This Agreement will be governed by the laws of the state of California.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, contact Nortel Networks, 4401 Great America Parkway, P.O. Box 58185, Santa Clara, California 95054-8185.

LICENSEE ACKNOWLEDGES THAT LICENSEE HAS READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTANDS IT, AND AGREES TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS. LICENSEE FURTHER AGREES THAT THIS AGREEMENT IS THE ENTIRE AND EXCLUSIVE AGREEMENT BETWEEN NORTEL NETWORKS AND LICENSEE, WHICH SUPERSEDES ALL PRIOR ORAL AND WRITTEN AGREEMENTS AND COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN THE PARTIES PERTAINING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THIS AGREEMENT. NO DIFFERENT OR ADDITIONAL TERMS WILL BE ENFORCEABLE AGAINST NORTEL NETWORKS UNLESS NORTEL NETWORKS GIVES ITS EXPRESS WRITTEN CONSENT, INCLUDING AN EXPRESS WAIVER OF THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Contents

Preface

Before You Begin xix
Text Conventions xx
Acronyms xxi
Related Publications xxiv
Hard-Copy Technical Manuals xxiv
How to Get Help xxv

Chapter 1
Data Link Switching Overview

DLSw Networking Overview 1-2
Nortel Networks DLSw Implementation 1-2
Nortel Networks Interoperability 1-3
RFC 1795 Support 1-3
Differences Between RFC 1795 and RFC 1434 1-4
DLSw Version 2 Unicast UDP Support 1-4
UDP Explorer Frames 1-5
TCP, UDP, and Unknown Peer Types 1-6
Single TCP/IP Connection 1-6
RFC 2166 Multicast Support 1-6
Differences Between RFC 2166 and RFC 1795 1-7
Configuring IP Multicast Protocols on the Router 1-7
Assigning an IP Multicast Group Address to a Slot 1-8
Sample Connection Using DLSw and IP Multicasting 1-9
DLSw Single-Switch and Dual-Switch Services 1-11
Single-Switch Services 1-13
FRAD Operation 1-14
SDLC-to-LLC2 Conversion 1-15
QLLC-to-LLC2 Conversion 1-16

Dual-Switch Services 1-16
SNA PU Descriptions 1-17
PU 1.0 Support 1-18
PU 2.0 Support 1-18
PU 2.1 Support 1-18
PU 4 Support 1-18
PU 5 Support 1-20
OSA-2 ATM Adapter Support for SNA Connectivity 1-20
Sample Configurations Using OSA-2 ATM Adapter 1-21
LLC Support 1-22
SDLC Support 1-23
Primary SDLC Support 1-24
Secondary SDLC Support 1-25
Combining Primary and Secondary SDLC 1-27
Negotiable SDLC Support 1-28
Frame Relay Support 1-28
Boundary Network Node (RFC 1490) 1-30
PVC Support 1-30
SVC Support 1-30
Boundary Access Node (RFC 1490) 1-31
MAC Address Translation 1-31
BAN2 Termination 1-34
QLLC Support 1-35
DLSw/APPN Boundary Function 1-36
DLSw/APPN Network Configurations 1-36
DLSw/APPN Components 1-37
RFC 2205 RSVP Support 1-40
Configuring DLSw RSVP Parameters 1-40
Starting RSVP 1-41
Specifying DLSw Traffic 1-43
DLSw Backup Peer Support 1-43
DLSw Filtering 1-44
DLSw Prioritization 1-44
Protocol Prioritization 1-45

Chapter 2
DLSw Implementation Notes

DLSw and Other Subsystems 2-2
Combining DLSw and SRB 2-2
Virtual Rings 2-4
DLSw and SRB on a Circuit 2-5
DLSw and Bridging Services 2-6
DLSw on an Ethernet/802.3 Circuit 2-6
DLSw with Translation Bridge 2-7
Using DLSw Independently of the Translation Bridge 2-8
Parallel Bridge and DLSw Paths 2-9
Multiple DLSw Peers on a LAN 2-10
Memory Requirements 2-10
TCP Considerations 2-11
Flow Control 2-12
LLC2 Flow Control 2-12
TCP Flow Control 2-13
DLSw Flow Control 2-13
DLSw Packaging 2-13
DLSw Prioritization 2-14
Protocol Prioritization Overview 2-14
Types of Protocol Prioritization 2-15
DLSw Priority Queues 2-15
Default and Peer-Specific DLSw Queues 2-16
The Enqueuing Process 2-16
Nonordered Queues 2-17
The Dequeuing Process 2-17
Tuning DLSw Protocol Prioritization 2-20
DLSw Priority Queues and Congestion Control 2-20
Queue Depth 2-20
Backup Peers 2-21

Chapter 3
Starting DLSw Services

Starting Configuration Tools 3-2
DLSw Configuration Hierarchy 3-2

Starting DLSw Globally 3-4
Starting DLSw over Ethernet 3-4
Starting DLSw over Token Ring 3-6
Starting DLSw over FDDI 3-8
Starting DLSw over SDLC 3-11
Starting DLSw over Frame Relay 3-15
Starting DLSw over Frame Relay BAN 3-15
Starting DLSw over Frame Relay BNN 3-18
Using PVCs 3-18
Using SVCs 3-21
Starting DLSw over QLLC 3-25
Starting DLSw over ATM LANE 3-26
Deleting DLSw from an Interface 3-30
Deleting DLSw from a Router 3-30

Chapter 4
Customizing DLSw Services

Adding Single-Switch DLSw Services 4-2
DLSw SAP Table 4-4
Adding a DLSw SAP Table Entry 4-6
Editing a DLSw SAP Table Entry 4-7
Adding Dual-Switch DLSw Services 4-8
DLSw Slot Table 4-12
Adding a DLSw Slot IP Table Entry 4-15
Editing a DLSw Slot IP Table Entry 4-16
DLSw Peer IP Table 4-17
Configured Peers 4-17
Peer Types 4-18
Backup Peers 4-19
Simplifying the Peer IP Table 4-19
Multicast IP Entries (RFC 2166) 4-21
Adding a DLSw Peer IP Table Entry 4-22
Editing a DLSw Peer IP Table Entry 4-23
Configuring DLSw Local Devices for SDLC 4-25
Editing a Local Device 4-29
Configuring Predefined MACs and Names 4-33

Dynamically Learned Remote Systems 4-33
Setting the NetBIOS and MAC Cache Age Timers 4-34
Statically Defined Remote Systems 4-35
Adding a DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry 4-36
Editing a DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry 4-37
Adding a DLSw Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry 4-38
Editing a DLSw Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry 4-39
Configuring DLSw Packaging 4-41
Configuring the DLSw/APPN Boundary Function 4-43
Disabling and Reenabling the Boundary Function 4-46
Configuring DLSw for IP Multicasting 4-47
Adding IP Multicasting to a Router Running DLSw 4-47
Adding IP Multicasting to Slots in a DLSw Router Running IP Multicast 4-50
Editing IP Multicasting Parameters 4-51
Configuring DLSw Backup Peers 4-52
Configuring Peers for an RFC (Multicast) Peer 4-52
Configuring Peers for an RFC 1434, 1795, or V2.0 Peer 4-54
Enabling RSVP for DLSw 4-57
Configuring DLSw RSVP Peers 4-58
Editing DLSw RSVP Global Parameters 4-58
Specifying SRB or TB for DLSw over ATM Token Ring LANE 4-59
Configuring MAC Address Translation 4-59
Configuring BAN-2 Termination 4-63
Configuring DLSw Prioritization 4-64
Configuring Default Priority Queues 4-64
Enabling the Default Queues for Configured and Unconfigured Peers 4-65
Customizing the Default Queue Configuration 4-65
Configuring Peer-Specific Priority Queues 4-66
Priority Queues for a Specific DLSw Peer 4-67
Enabling or Disabling a Single Peer's Priority Queues 4-68
Customizing Specific DLSw Peer Queues 4-68
Creating DLSw Priority Filters 4-69

Appendix A
Site Manager Parameters

Using the Parameter Descriptions A-2
DLSw Basic Global Parameters A-3
DLSw Basic Interface Parameters A-8
DLSw Advanced Global Parameters A-10
DLSw Advanced Interface Configuration Parameters A-26
Adding Local Device Configuration Parameters A-28
Local Device Configuration Parameters A-43
Adding DLSw Peer IP Table Entry Parameters A-44
DLSw Peer IP Table Entry Parameters A-45
DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters A-51
Adding DLSw Slot IP Table Entry Parameters A-57
DLSw Slot IP Table Entry Parameter A-59
Adding DLSw SAP Table Entry Parameters A-60
DLSw SAP Table Entry Parameter A-61
Adding DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry Parameters A-62
DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry Parameter A-64
Adding DLSw MAC Peer IP Table Entry Parameters A-65
Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry Parameter A-67
VCCT Slot Parameter A-68
VCCT Circuit Configuration Parameter A-69
Enabling VCCT Global Parameter A-70
Enabling VCCT Interface Parameter A-71
Adding DLSw Multicast Parameters A-72
DLSw Multicast and Backup Peer Parameters A-74
DLSw RSVP Global Parameters A-79
Adding MAC Address Translation Parameters A-84
DLSw MAC Address Translation Table A-85
Global DLSw Protocol Priority Parameters A-86
Peer Queue Configuration Parameters A-90
Adding Queue Parameters A-92
DLS Priority Filters Parameters A-93

Appendix B
Criteria for DLSw Prioritization

Predefined DLSw Criteria B-2
DLSw Reference Points B-3
Specifying MAC Address Ranges B-4
Source Routing Bridge Source MAC Addresses B-4
Source Routing Bridge Functional MAC Addresses B-5
Specifying Source and Destination SAP Code Ranges B-6

Appendix C
Troubleshooting DLSw Networks

Viewing the DLSw Log C-2
Enabling Extended Logging C-2
Using and Decoding the DLSw Log C-5
Sample Log Entries C-7
Event Code 16 ..... C-7
Event Code 17 ..... C-7
Event Code 36 ..... C-7
Event Code 45 ..... C-8
DLSw Session Setup C-8
Establishing DLSw/LLC Connections C-9
Reviewing the Network Log C-11
Establishing DLSw/SDLC Connections C-12
Reviewing the Network Connection Sequence C-14
Disconnecting from the Network C-15
Troubleshooting DLSw C-16
Viewing Isolated Problems C-16
Common DLSw Problems and Nonproblems C-18
Common DLSw Problems C-18
Common DLSw Nonproblems C-21
DLSw Troubleshooting Tables C-23
Verifying the WAN Cabling C-31
Flowcharts C-33

Appendix D
Monitoring DLSw Using the BCC show Commands

show dlsw all D-2
show dlsw connections D-2
show dlsw global D-3
show dlsw interfaces D-6
show dlsw local-devices D-7
show dlsw mac-peers D-8
show dlsw multicast-ip D-9
show dlsw netbios-peers D-10
show dlsw peers D-11
show dlsw saps D-12
show dlsw slots D-13
show dlsw summary D-13

Index

Figures

Figure 1-1. Addressing a Message to an IP Multicast Group 1-8
Figure 1-2. Receiving a Message Addressed to a Multicast Group 1-9
Figure 1-3. Multicast DLSw 1-10
Figure 1-4. DLSw Networks: (a) Single-Switch and (b) Dual Switch-to-Switch 1-12
Figure 1-5. Nortel Networks Single-Switch Router 1-14
Figure 1-6. Nortel Networks Adjacent Single-Switch Routers 1-15
Figure 1-7. DLSw Dual-Switch Services for SNA Devices on LANs 1-17
Figure 1-8. Routers Connecting IBM 3745 Devices 1-19
Figure 1-9. SRB over ATM Token Ring LANE 1-21
Figure 1-10. DLSw Over ATM Ethernet LANE 1-21
Figure 1-11. DLSw Dual Switch over ATM LANE Token Ring Using TCP/IP 1-22
Figure 1-12. Primary SDLC Routers in Single-Switch DLSw Networks 1-25
Figure 1-13. Secondary SDLC Routers in (a) Single-Switch and (b) Dual-Switch DLSw Networks 1-26
Figure 1-14. Combining Primary and Secondary SDLC 1-27
Figure 1-15. Sample Frame Relay Network 1-29
Figure 1-16. Sample Network Using MAC Address Translation 1-33
Figure 1-17. Sample Network Using BAN2 Termination 1-35
Figure 1-18. Enterprise APPN Network 1-36
Figure 1-19. Boundary Function Virtual Circuit 1-37
Figure 1-20. End-to-End Connection Using a DLSw/APPN Router and a DLSw Router 1-38
Figure 1-21. End-to-End Connection Using Two DLSw/APPN Routers 1-39
Figure 1-22. Initiating DLSw Reservations 1-42
Figure 2-1. DLSw-Capable Routers on an IP Backbone 2-3
Figure 2-2. Sample DLSw and SRB Network 2-4
Figure 2-3. DLSw and Source Route Bridging on SRB Circuits 2-6
Figure 2-4. DLSw and Transparent Bridging on Ethernet/802.3 Circuits 2-7
Figure 2-5. Translation Bridge Services 2-8

Figure 2-6. Independent DLSw/Translation Bridge Network 2-9
Figure 2-7. DLSw Services in Parallel with a Source Routing Bridge 2-10
Figure 2-8. Weighted Dequeuing 2-19
Figure 3-1. DLSw Configuration Hierarchy 3-2
Figure 4-1. DLSw Single-Switch Network Example 4-2
Figure 4-2. Sample Network with SAP Table Definitions 4-5
Figure 4-3. DLSw Dual-Switch Network Example 4-9
Figure 4-4. Sample Network with Slot Table Definitions 4-14
Figure 4-5. Sample Network with Peer IP Table Definitions 4-21
Figure A-1. DLSw Basic Global Parameters Window A-4
Figure A-2. DLSw Basic Global Parameters Window (for SRB) A-7
Figure A-3. DLSw Basic Interface Parameters Window A-8
Figure A-4. DLSw Basic Interface Parameters (for SRB) A-9
Figure A-5. Edit DLSw Global Parameters Window A-11
Figure A-6. DLSw Interface Configuration Window A-26
Figure A-7. Local Device Configuration Window A-29
Figure A-8. DLS Local Device Configuration Window A-43
Figure A-9. Add DLSw Peer Configuration Window A-44
Figure A-10. DLSw Peer Configuration Window A-45
Figure A-11. Edit DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters Window A-51
Figure A-12. Add DLSw Slot Configuration Window A-58
Figure A-13. DLSw Slot Configuration Window A-59
Figure A-14. DLSw SAP Parameter Window A-60
Figure A-15. DLSw SAP Configuration Window A-61
Figure A-16. DLSw NetBIOS Configuration Window A-63
Figure A-17. DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration Window A-64
Figure A-18. DLSw MAC Configuration Window A-66
Figure A-19. DLSw MAC Peer Configuration Window A-67
Figure A-20. VCCT Slot Configuration Window A-68
Figure A-21. VCCT Cct Configuration Window A-69
Figure A-22. Edit VCCT Global Parameters Window A-71
Figure A-23. VCCT Circuits Window A-72
Figure A-24. Add DLSw Multicast Configuration Window A-73
Figure A-25. DLSw Multicast Configuration Window A-74
Figure A-26. Edit DLSw RSVP Global Parameters Window A-79

Figure A-27. DLSw MAC Address Translation Window A-84
Figure A-28. DLSw MAC Address Translation Table Window A-85
Figure A-29. Global DLSw PP Parameters/Defaults Window A-86
Figure A-30. Peer Queue Configuration Window A-90
Figure A-31. Add Queue Window A-92
Figure A-32. DLS Priority/Outbound Filters Window A-94
Figure C-1. Sample DLSw/LLC2 Network Connection Sequence (RFC 1434) C-10
Figure C-2. Sample DLSw/SDLC Network Connection Sequence C-13
Figure C-3. Data Flow for Routers Running RFC 1434 (PU 2.0 over LLC) C-33
Figure C-4. Data Flow for Routers Running RFC 1434 (PU 2.1 over LLC) C-34
Figure C-5. Data Flow for Routers Running RFC 1795 ..... C-35
Figure C-6. Data Flow for Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 ..... C-36
Figure C-7. Data Flow for Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 and RFC 1795 (Peer on RFC 1795 Router) C-37
Figure C-8. Data Flow for Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 and RFC 1795 (Peer on Version 2.0 Router) C-38
Figure C-9. Exchange Between Two Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 (UDP or Unknown Peer on One Router) C-39
Figure C-10. Exchange Between a Router Running DLSw Version 2.0 and One Running RFC 1795 (Peer on RFC 1795 Router) C-40
Figure C-11. Exchange Between Two Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 (Unknown Peer in Fallback Mode on One Router) C-41
Figure C-12. Exchange Between Two Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 (TCP Peer Configured as Remote Router in Fallback Mode on One Router) C-42
Figure C-13. Primary to Secondary SDLC Data Flow Using Single-Switch SNA/Frame Relay C-43
Figure C-14. Primary SDLC to LLC2 Data Flow Using Single-Switch SNA/Frame Relay C-44

Tables

Table A-1. Customizing the DLSw Support Protocols A-3
Table A-2. IDBLOCK Numbers for Switched PUs A-33
Table B-1. Predefined Outbound Filter Criteria Based on DLSw Header B-2
Table B-2. DLSw Reference Points for FID2 Frames B-3
Table B-3. DLSw Reference Points for FID4 Frames B-3
Table B-4. Format for Specifying Source Routing MAC Addresses B-4
Table B-5. Functional MAC Addresses B-5
Table B-6. SAP Codes B-6
Table C-1. Extended Logging Commands for Subsystems C-3
Table C-2. Log Messages C-4
Table C-3. DLSw State Table C-5
Table C-4. DLSw Event Table C-6
Table C-5. Common DLSw Problems C-18
Table C-6. DLSw Configuration Troubleshooting C-23
Table C-7. DLSw Interface Troubleshooting C-24
Table C-8. TCP Troubleshooting C-25
Table C-9. SNA Troubleshooting C-26
Table C-10. NetBIOS Troubleshooting C-27
Table C-11. LLC Troubleshooting C-28
Table C-12. SDLC Troubleshooting C-28
Table C-13. BLN and BCN Synchronous Interface Cables C-31
Table C-14. AN, ARN, ASN, and EASF Synchronous Interface Cables C-31
Table C-15. Octal Sync Interface Cables C-32
Table C-16. Male No-Modem Cables C-32

Preface

This guide describes data link switching (DLSw) and what you do to start and customize DLSw services on a Nortel Networks™ router.

You can use the Bay Command Console (BCC™) or Site Manager to configure DLSw on a router. In this guide, you will find instructions for using both the BCC and Site Manager.

Before You Begin

Before using this guide, you must complete the following procedures. For a new router:

- Install the router (see the installation guide that came with your router).
- Connect the router to the network and create a pilot configuration file (see *Quick-Starting Routers*, *Configuring BayStack Remote Access*, or *Connecting ASN Routers to a Network)*.

Make sure that you are running the latest version of Nortel Networks BayRS™ and Site Manager software. For information about upgrading BayRS and Site Manager, see the upgrading guide for your version of BayRS.

Text Conventions

This guide uses the following text conventions:

angle brackets (< >)	Indicate that you choose the text to enter based on the description inside the brackets. Do not type the brackets when entering the command. Example: If the command syntax is: **ping** <*ip_address*>, you enter: **ping 192.32.10.12**
bold text	Indicates command names and options and text that you need to enter. Example: Enter **show ip** {**alerts** | **routes**}. Example: Use the **dinfo** command.
italic text	Indicates new terms, book titles, and variables in command syntax descriptions. Where a variable is two or more words, the words are connected by an underscore. Example: If the command syntax is: **show at** <*valid_route*> *valid_route* is one variable and you substitute one value for it.
`screen text`	Indicates system output, for example, prompts and system messages. Example: `Set Trap Monitor Filters`

separator (>)	Shows menu paths. Example: Protocols > IP identifies the IP option on the Protocols menu.
vertical line (|)	Separates choices for command keywords and arguments. Enter only one of the choices. Do not type the vertical line when entering the command. Example: If the command syntax is: **show ip** {**alerts** | **routes**}, you enter either: **show ip alerts** or **show ip routes**, but not both.

Acronyms

This guide uses the following acronyms:

APPN	Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking
ATM	asynchronous transfer mode
BAN	Boundary Access Node
BF	boundary function
BNI	boundary node identifier
BNN	Boundary Network Node
CCITT	Consultative Committee on International Telegraph and Telephone
CHPID	channel path ID
COS	class of service
DAF	destination address field
DNA	data network address
DLSw	data link switching
DLCI	data link connection identifier
DLUR	dependent logical unit requestor
DLUS	dependent logical unit server
DSAP	destination SAP

DVMRP	Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol
EASF	Ethernet Access Synchronous Filter
EFI	expidited flow indicator
FDDI	Fiber Distributed Data Interface
FEP	front-end-processor
FID	format identifier
FIFO	first in first out
FRAD	Frame Relay Access Device
HPR	high-performance routing
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IGMP	Internet Gateway Management Protocol
IP	Internet Protocol
ITU-T	International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunications sector (formerly CCITT)
LAN	local area network
LANE	LAN emulation
LEC	LAN emulation client
LLC	logical link control
MAC	media access control
MIB	management information base
MOSPF	Multicast Open Shortest Path First
MSB	most significant bit
MTU	maximum transmission unit
NCP	network control program
NetBIOS	Network Basic Input-Output System
OAF	origin address field
OSA	Open System Adapter
PDU	protocol data unit
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol

PU	physical unit
PVC	permanent virtual circuit
QLLC	qualified logical link control
RFC	Request for Comments
RIF	routing information field
RNR	receiver not ready
RR	receiver ready
R/RH	response/request header
RSVP	Resource Reservation Protocol
RU	request unit
SABME	set asynchronous balanced mode extended
SAP	service access point
SDLC	Synchronous Data Link Control
SMDS	switched multimegabit data service
SNA	Systems Network Architecture
SNRM	set normal response mode
SRB	source route bridging
SSP	Switch-to-Switch Protocol
SSAP	source SAP
SVC	switched virtual circuit
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol
TEST	test
TH	transmission header
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UA	unnumbered acknowledgement
VCCT	virtual channel connection termination
VTAM	virtual telecommunications access method
WAN	wide area network

XCA	external communications adapter
XID	exchange station identification

Related Publications

For more information about using DLSw, refer to the following publications:

- Dixon, Roy C., and David M. Kushi. *Data Link Switching: Switch-to-Switch Protocol, RFC 1434*, March 1993.
- IBM Corporation. *NetBIOS Frames Protocol, IBM Local Area Technical Reference, SC30-3383-03*, December 1990.
- International Standards Organization. *ISO 8802-2/IEEE Std 802.2 International Standard, Information Processing Systems, Local Area Networks, Part 2: Logical Link Control*, December 31, 1989.
- International Standards Organization. *ISO/IEC DIS 10038 DAM 2, MAC Bridging, Source Routing Supplement*, December 1991.
- Wells, L., and A. Bartky. *Data Link Switching: Switch-to-Switch Protocol, RFC 1795*, April 1995.
- Bryant, D., and P. Brittain. *DLSw v2.0 Enhancements, RFC 2166*, June 1997.
- *Synchronous Data Link Control Concepts*, GA27-3093-04, IBM Corporation. 1979, 1992.
- Nortel Networks. *Configuring SDLC Services*, 117371-B Rev. 00, April 1999.
- Braden, R., L. Zhang, S. Berson, S. Herzog, and S. Jamin. *Resource ReSerVation Protocol (RSVP)*, RFC 2205, September 1997.

Hard-Copy Technical Manuals

You can print selected technical manuals and release notes free, directly from the Internet. Go to the support.baynetworks.com/library/tpubs/ URL. Find the product for which you need documentation. Then locate the specific category and model or version for your hardware or software product. Use Adobe Acrobat Reader to open the manuals and release notes, search for the sections you need, and print them on most standard printers. Go to Adobe Systems at www.adobe.com to download a free copy of Acrobat Reader.

You can purchase selected documentation sets, CDs, and technical publications through the Internet at the www1.fatbrain.com/documentation/nortel/ URL.

How to Get Help

If you purchased a service contract for your Nortel Networks product from a distributor or authorized reseller, contact the technical support staff for that distributor or reseller for assistance.

If you purchased a Nortel Networks service program, contact one of the following Nortel Networks Technical Solutions Centers:

Technical Solutions Center	Telephone
EMEA	(33) (4) 92-966-968
North America	(800) 2LANWAN or (800) 252-6926
Asia Pacific	(61) (2) 9927-8800
China	(800) 810-5000

An Express Routing Code (ERC) is available for many Nortel Networks products and services. When you use an ERC, your call is routed to a technical support person who specializes in supporting that product or service. To locate an ERC for your product or service, go to the www12.nortelnetworks.com/ URL and click ERC at the bottom of the page.

Chapter 1
Data Link Switching Overview

This chapter includes the following information about data link switching (DLSw) services:

Topic	Page
DLSw Networking Overview	1-2
RFC 1795 Support	1-3
DLSw Version 2 Unicast UDP Support	1-4
RFC 2166 Multicast Support	1-6
DLSw Single-Switch and Dual-Switch Services	1-11
SNA PU Descriptions	1-17
OSA-2 ATM Adapter Support for SNA Connectivity	1-20
LLC Support	1-22
SDLC Support	1-23
Frame Relay Support	1-28
MAC Address Translation	1-31
BAN2 Termination	1-34
QLLC Support	1-35
DLSw/APPN Boundary Function	1-36
RFC 2205 RSVP Support	1-40
DLSw Backup Peer Support	1-43
DLSw Filtering	1-44

You should review this chapter if you are responsible for configuring DLSw on one or more Nortel Networks routers. If you are already familiar with DLSw concepts, you can go directly to Chapter 2, "DLSw Implementation Notes," for more detailed information about DLSw on Nortel Networks routers.

DLSw Networking Overview

DLSw provides a standards-based mechanism for reliably transporting connection-oriented Systems Network Architecture (SNA) and Network Basic Input/Output System (NetBIOS) data across a network. Originally defined in RFC 1434, currently defined in RFC 1795, then enhanced in DLSw Version 2 and RFC 2166, DLSw resolves the issues associated with transporting SNA and NetBIOS information across a multiprotocol backbone.

Specifically, DLSw:

- Prevents sessions from timing out due to slow network response time
- Automatically reroutes traffic around failed links
- Improves response time by reducing network overhead
- Enables multiple locations to interconnect without requiring a network manager to reconfigure existing bridges

Nortel Networks DLSw Implementation

The Nortel Networks DLSw implementation adds several benefits, including:

- Symmetric multiprocessor architecture, providing a highly scalable and reliable implementation
- Advanced flow control, ensuring that the router-based network delivers information as reliably as existing SNA networks
- Integrated SDLC-to-LLC2 conversion, enabling you to reduce the cost of front-end processor (FEP) ports (for example, 3745), maintenance, and software
- RFC 1490 (LLC2 over frame relay) support, enabling a Nortel Networks router to communicate across a frame relay network directly to a front-end processor or other device that supports this protocol
- DLSw prioritization, allowing preferred DLSw traffic to receive higher priority than other traffic

Nortel Networks Interoperability

The Nortel Networks DLSw implementation is fully interoperable with RFC 1434, RFC 1795, and RFC 2166 DLSw implementations.

DLSw runs on all Nortel Networks router platforms using local and wide area network facilities, including:

- LLC2 media, including Ethernet, token ring, frame relay, and asynchronous transfer mode (ATM) LAN emulation (LANE)
- Other media using source route bridging (SRB) formats, including Fiber Distributed Data Interface (FDDI), switched multimegabit data service (SMDS), frame relay, Point-to-Point (PPP), and ATM (RFC 1483)
- Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC) links in point-to-point and multipoint configurations
- X.25 links using the Qualified Logical Link Control (QLLC) protocol

You can use DLSw services to support connections between SNA and NetBIOS systems on one type of network (such as token ring/802.5) and systems on different types of networks (such as token ring/802.5 and frame relay).

Note: In this guide, the term local area network (LAN) refers to all SRB types of LANs and transparent bridge Ethernet/802.3 LANs. SRB LANs include, but are not limited to, token ring/802.5, FDDI, Ethernet/802.3, SMDS, frame relay, and other synchronous media protocols. For more information on the media that SRB supports, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.

RFC 1795 Support

RFC 1795, called DLSw Version 1, an implementation developed by a consortium of vendors, supersedes the original DLSw specification RFC 1434. Starting with Version 11.0, Nortel Networks DLSw routers support RFC 1795 and are fully compatible with Nortel Networks routers that support RFC 1434 with Version 10.0 or earlier.

Differences Between RFC 1795 and RFC 1434

Based on RFC 1434, RFC 1795 describes new features as well as modifications to the standard, including:

- Modified frame format for session setup, including a field for the largest frame size.
- Directed broadcast CANUREACH and ICANREACH control frames. This feature reduces broadcasting over the network.
- Capabilities exchange, allowing routers to exchange resource information about each other. Capabilities exchange flows operate in three categories:
  - -- Fixed information, such as an organization's software version
  - -- Customized information, where one router transfers the information to another router
  - -- Negotiation, where routers negotiate the use of proprietary functions (and only if both routers support the functions under negotiation)
- Rate-based pacing, a new standard for flow control between routers. Flow control allows a DLSw router to inform another router to slow down or stop sending data when the receiving buffer(s) fill up. Rate-based flow control uses a windowing mechanism that allows the routers to send more or fewer packets, based on the state of the last receive window. If the router successfully receives the last transmission, it informs the sending router to continue to send more packets. Flow control is essential for successful delivery of SNA and NetBIOS data.

DLSw Version 2 Unicast UDP Support

DLSw Version 2 and RFC 2166 are usually interchangeable terms. The Nortel Networks implementation of DLSw Version 2, however, offers only unicast User Datagram Protocol (UDP) support, while the RFC 2166 implementation provides full multicast support.

Beginning with BayRS Version 11.02, unicast UDP support allows you to do the following:

- Use unicast User Datagram Protocol (UDP) to send the initial session establishment request (CanuReach) instead of using Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) as in RFC 1434 and RFC 1795.
- Configure peer type (TCP, UDP, and Unknown).
- Configure dual unidirectional or single bidirectional TCP connections.

The DLSw RFC Version parameter allows you to set up your configuration for DLSw Version 2. A router that you configure for DLSw Version 2 can also communicate with routers running RFC 1434 and RFC 1795 implementations.

UDP Explorer Frames

If a TCP/IP session is not active, the local router can send UDP explorer frames across the network to locate the destination media access control (MAC) address. When the local router finds the destination MAC address, the destination router returns a UDP response. The local router, together with the router returning the UDP response, establish a TCP/IP session. Using UDP explorer frames allows the sending router to "explore" the network before opening a TCP session, enabling routers to support a larger network.

TCP/IP sessions between routers establish themselves across the network when a router locates a destination MAC address. When established, a TCP/IP session remains active between the routers until there are no remaining SNA/NetBIOS sessions, or until a TCP connection is idle over a configured time period.

If the local router cannot find the destination MAC address (no UDP response), the local router establishes TCP sessions with all entries in the peer table using either RFC 1795 or RFC 1434 protocol standards if the destination MAC is an unknown peer type.

You can configure DLSw to use UDP explorer frames to establish TCP/IP sessions with DLSw peers by setting the Transport Type parameter, described in Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."

TCP, UDP, and Unknown Peer Types

With DLSw Version 2 unicast, you can configure DLSw peers as type TCP, UDP, or unknown. If the peer type is unknown, the local router sends UDP explorer frames to establish a connection. If the local router does not receive a UDP response after a number of attempts, it tries to fall back to earlier DLSw RFCs to establish the connection.

If the peer type is TCP, a TCP connection is established when you start the local router. If the peer type is UDP, a TCP connection occurs only after the UDP explorer frames are correctly exchanged.

For information about the Transport Type and SNA Fallback Attempts parameters, refer to Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."

Single TCP/IP Connection

To transport data, DLSw Version 2 uses a single full-duplex TCP session, instead of two half-duplex sessions, thereby reducing the amount of time and memory used to make the TCP connection.

RFC 2166 Multicast Support

In addition to IP unicast broadcast services, DLSw provides IP multicast support. The capability to send and receive both IP multicast and unicast traffic makes the Nortel Networks implementation of DLSw fully compliant with RFC 2166.

RFC 2166 is an implementation of DLSw developed by the APPN Implementors Workshop, a consortium of vendors.

RFC 2166 improves scalability by allowing you to do the following:

- Send the initial session establishment request (CanuReach) using multicast IP.
- Use only single bidirectional TCP connections.
- Establish (and disconnect) TCP connections on demand and as needed.

For diagnostic purposes, RFC 2166 also provides reason codes with the HALT_DL and HALT_DL_NOACK SSP messages.

Differences Between RFC 2166 and RFC 1795

Comparing RFC 2166 with earlier DLSw RFCs 1434 and 1795 shows how RFC 2166 reduces the amount of broadcast traffic on the network:

- Under RFCs 1434 and 1795, to establish a network connection, an end station (an SNA or NetBIOS application) first sends a DLSw SSP CanuReach (or NETBIOS_NQ) message to all routers that are part of the DLSw network. In a large network with many end stations, these connection attempts result in a large number of packets traveling on the network. Also, under RFCs 1434 and 1795, TCP connections must be constantly maintained between all participating routers within the DLSw network.
- Under RFC 2166, network connections are established only when needed and maintained only as long the end stations require. In addition, end stations use multicast IP to send the initial CanuReach (or NetBIOS) messages, thus reducing the amount of traffic on the network.

By default, DLSw operates in RFC 1434 mode. You can use either the Site Manager parameter DLSw RFC Version or the BCC command **rfc-type** to configure DLSw in RFC 2166 multicast mode. For instructions, see "Configuring DLSw for IP Multicasting" on page 4-47.

Configuring IP Multicast Protocols on the Router

A router configured for DLSw with IP multicasting support must also be running:

- IP (Internet Protocol)
- IGMP (Internet Gateway Management Protocol)
- DVMRP (Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol), MOSPF (Multicast Open Shortest Path First), or both

You must configure IP on at least one slot on the router and assign an IP address to each DLSw slot as described in Chapter 3, "Starting DLSw Services."

For complete information about IP multicasting and instructions for configuring IGMP, DVMRP, and MOSPF on the router, see *Configuring IP Multicasting and Multimedia Services*.

Assigning an IP Multicast Group Address to a Slot

In an IP multicasting network, a sender--or *source*--of IP multicast datagrams addresses each datagram to a *group* of receivers. An IP multicast group address is a Class D address (the high-order bits are set to 1110) from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255.

Note: Do not use addresses 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255; these addresses are used for control purposes only.

On a router configured for DLSw multicasting, each DLSw slot is associated with an IP multicast group address. The router in Figure 1-1, for example, is running DLSw on slot 3. The network administrator has assigned the group address 224.0.10.0 to slot 3.

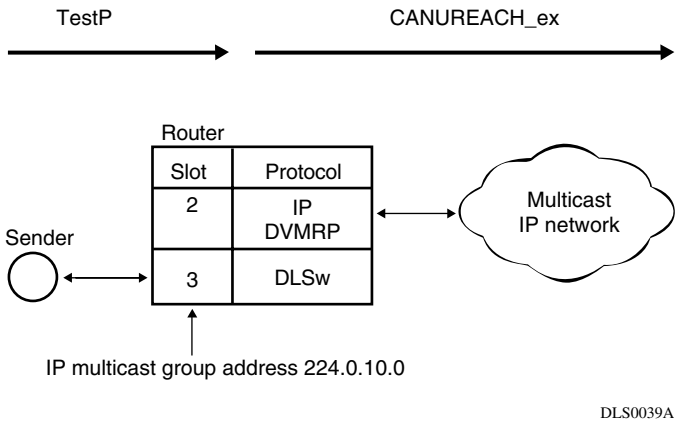

Figure 1-1. Addressing a Message to an IP Multicast Group

When DLSw receives a TestP message, the following steps occur:

1. DLSw converts the TestP message into a CANUREACH_ex message.
2. DLSw uses the IP multicast group address associated with slot 3 (224.0.10.0) as the destination address of the CANUREACH message.
3. DLSw passes the message to IP running on slot 2.
4. IP sends the message to the IP multicast network.

When the router receives a CANUREACH_ex message on a slot configured with IP, the reverse sequence occurs (Figure 1-2):

1. The router receives a CANUREACH_ex message.
2. IP determines that the CANUREACH_ex message is addressed to multicast group 224.0.10.0.
3. IP forwards the message to DLSw on slot 3.
4. DLSw converts the CANUREACH_ex message to a TestP message and sends it out a DLSw interface to the receiver.

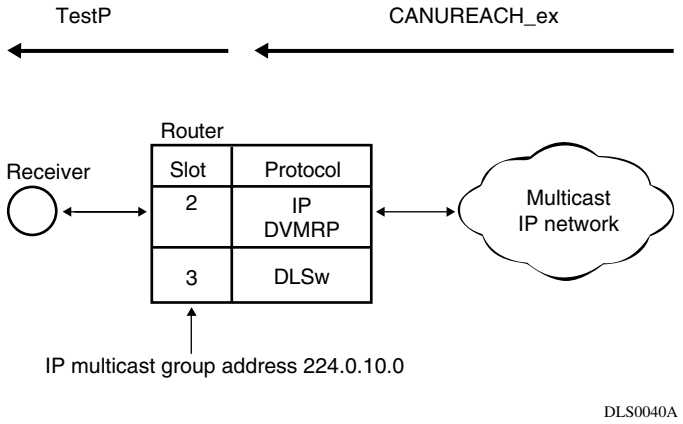

Figure 1-2. Receiving a Message Addressed to a Multicast Group

You can use Site Manager to specify an IP multicast group address and associate it with a DLSw slot or slots. For instructions, see “Configuring DLSw for IP Multicasting” on page 4-47.

Sample Connection Using DLSw and IP Multicasting

Figure 1-3 shows a pair of routers running DLSw in RFC 2166 mode. On router A, IP and DVMRP are running on slot 2, and DLSw is running on slot 3. On router B, DLSw is running on slot 2, and IP and DVMRP are running on slot 3.

Router A connects to end station 1 through a DLSw interface on slot 3. Router A has an IP interface on slot 2 to the IP multicast network. Routers B and C are configured identically. Both connect to hosts through a DLSw interface on slot 2. Both have an interface to the IP network on slot 3.

On router A, the network administrator has assigned IP multicast group address 224.0.10.0 to DLSw slot 3. On router B, the network administrator has assigned group address 224.0.10.0 to DLSw slot 2.

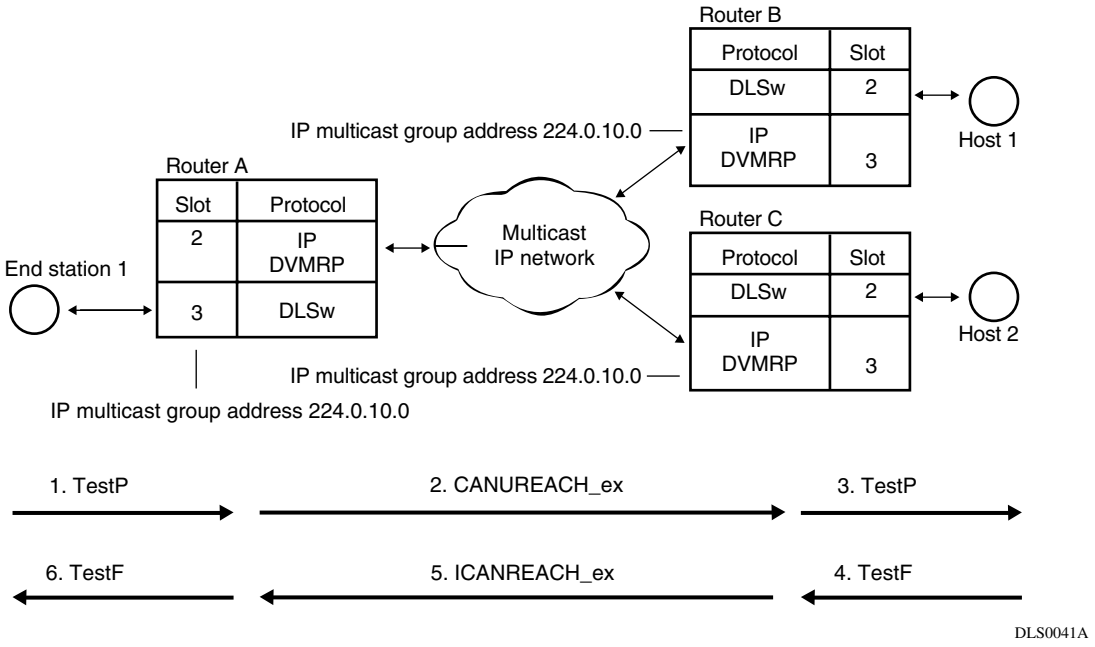

Figure 1-3. Multicast DLSw

When end station 1 generates an SNA TestP message, the following steps occur:

1. Router A receives the TestP message on slot 3.
2. Router A multicasts a CANUREACH_ex message on slot 2, using the group address 224.0.10.0.
3. Routers B and C receive the CANUREACH_ex message and forward the message to slot 3, configured with the IP multicast group address.
4. Router B sends a TestP message on slot 3 to host 1.
5. Router C sends a TestP message on slot 3 to host 2.
6. Host 1 responds to the TestP message by sending a TestF message.
7. Router B receives the TestF message on slot 3.
8. Router B sends an ICANREACH_ex message on slot 2. (Router B sends this message in an IP unicast datagram.)
9. Router A receives the ICANREACH_ex unicast message on slot 2 and forwards it to DLSw slot 3.
10. Router A sends a TestF message to end station 1.

DLSw Single-Switch and Dual-Switch Services

Nortel Networks routers that you configure to support DLSw services can operate in two modes:

- A DLSw single-switch configuration involving a single local router with two (or more) interfaces configured for DLSw
- A DLSw dual switch-to-switch configuration involving paired routers, each connected to an intervening TCP/IP network

A Nortel Networks router simultaneously supports both single- and dual-switch operation. Figure 1-4 illustrates DLSw single-switch and dual switch-to-switch networks.

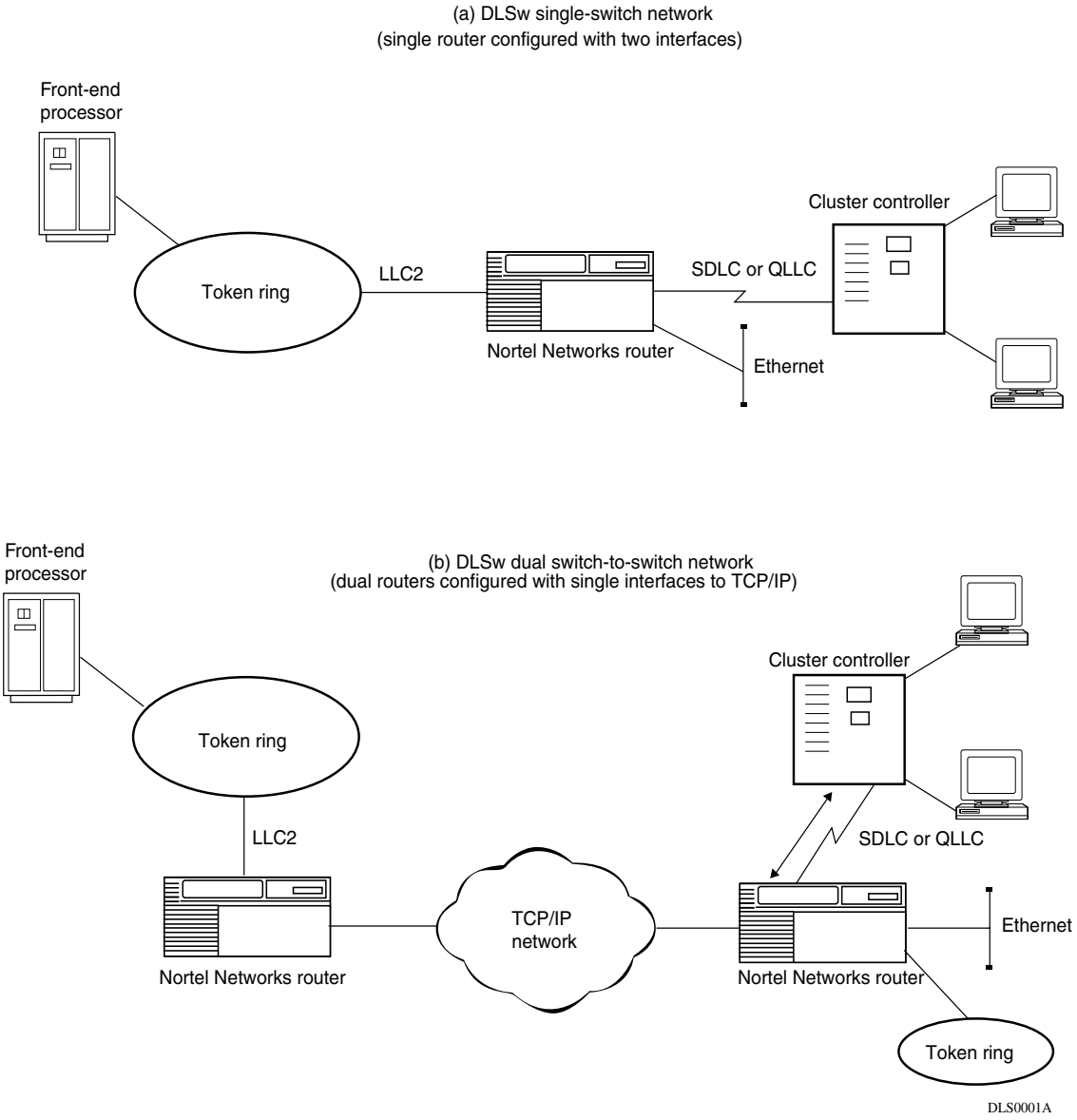

Figure 1-4. DLSw Networks: (a) Single-Switch and (b) Dual Switch-to-Switch

Single-Switch Services

DLSw single-switch services enable the router to perform link-level conversion, while providing services to ensure session integrity. Examples of single-switch conversions include:

- SDLC to token ring
- SDLC to frame relay (RFC 1490)
- Token ring to Ethernet
- Ethernet to Bridged SNA over frame relay
- QLLC to token ring

Single-switch configurations provide services to attached devices and networks to ensure session availability, including:

- Local acknowledgment and termination of the LLC2, SDLC, or QLLC session
- 802.5 routing information field (RIF) caching
- MAC address and NetBIOS name caching

Figure 1-5 illustrates a sample network using a single Nortel Networks router. The router can communicate with an IBM SNA processor or other LAN gateway.

Note: If you configure either two token ring interfaces or ATM token ring LANE, or a token ring interface and a frame relay Boundary Access Node (BAN) interface on a DLSw single switch, the traffic between the two interfaces uses SRB, not DLSw. However, if you enable BAN2 termination for the router (see Chapter 4 for instructions), the traffic between the interfaces uses DLSw.

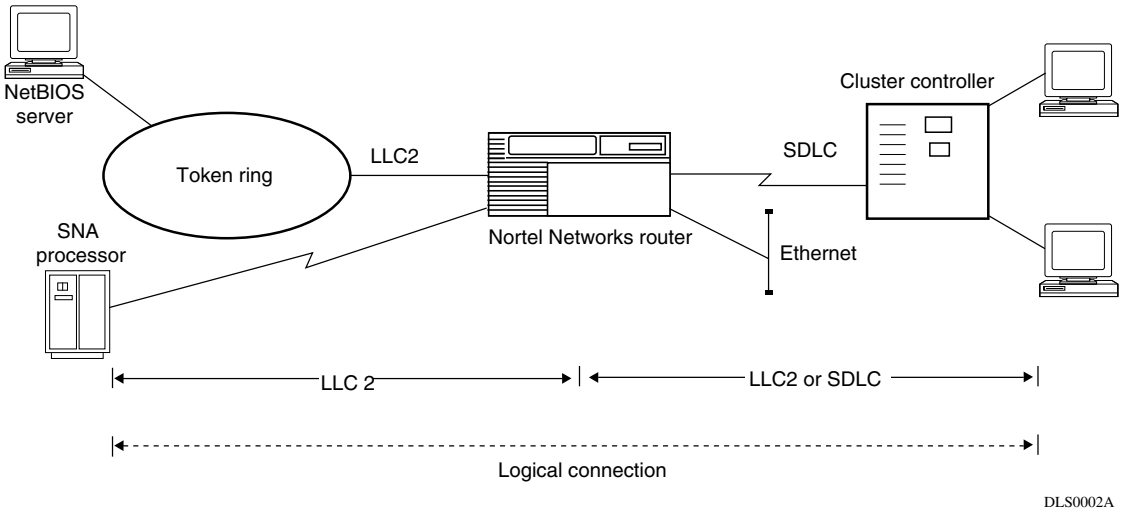

Figure 1-5. Nortel Networks Single-Switch Router

Single-switch services support any media-to-media conversion (for example, SDLC-to-QLLC). The following types of single-switch conversion are described in detail:

- FRAD operation
- SDLC-to-LLC2 conversion
- QLLC-to-LLC2 conversion

FRAD Operation

Single-switch services enable a Nortel Networks router to function as a Frame Relay Access Device (FRAD). SNA devices are typically connected over a LAN or SDLC connection to the router, providing local termination. The router first connects to the frame relay (or other wide area) network, and then to an SNA processor using the Boundary Network Node (BNN) or the Boundary Access Node (BAN). BNN is the RFC 1490 standard. For more information on BNN and BAN, see “Frame Relay Support” on page 1-28.

SDLC-to-LLC2 Conversion

Using single-switch conversion enables the router to convert incoming SDLC traffic into the appropriate format for forwarding to an attached LAN or frame relay network. The conversion does not require an intervening wide area network WAN.

Figure 1-6 illustrates a network using adjacent routers, each performing single-switch conversion. Between single-switch routers, the LLC2 protocol is used.

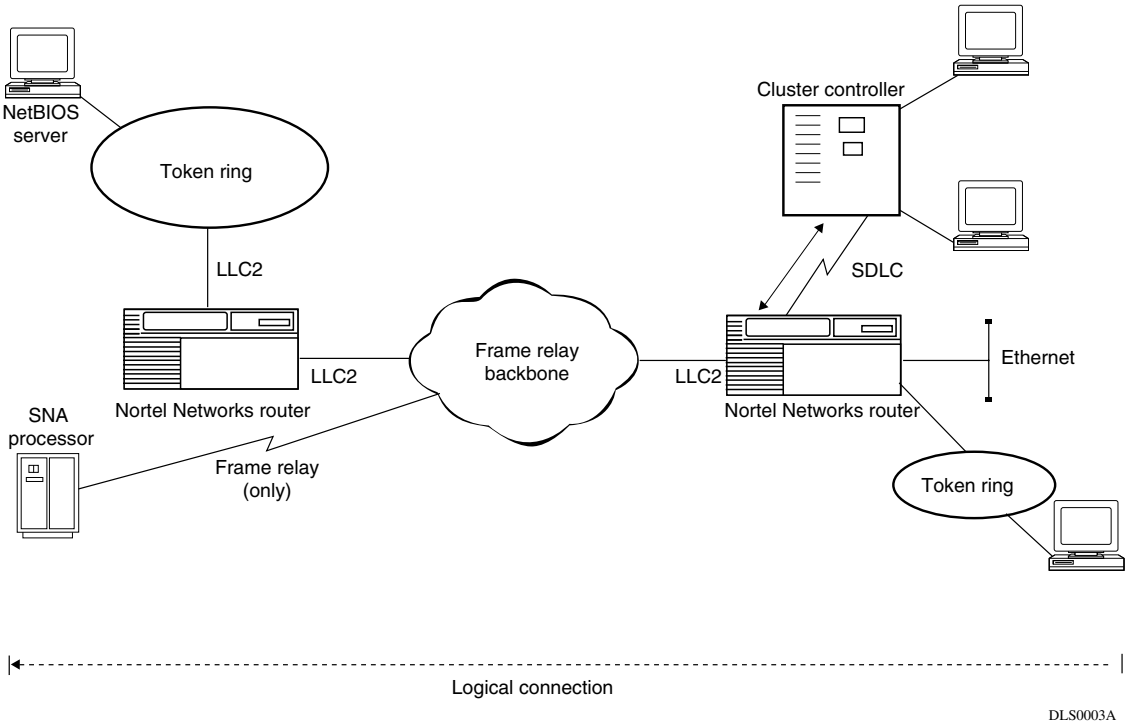

Figure 1-6. Nortel Networks Adjacent Single-Switch Routers

QLLC-to-LLC2 Conversion

Using single-switch conversion enables the router to convert incoming QLLC traffic (received over an X.25 network) into the appropriate format for forwarding to an attached LAN or frame relay network. The conversion does not require an intervening WAN.

Dual-Switch Services

DLSw dual-switch services allow SNA and NetBIOS traffic to share a multiprotocol backbone. The DLSw standard specifies TCP/IP as the standard transport mechanism for SNA and NetBIOS across an internetwork.

DLSw dual-switch services uses TCP/IP between routers, unlike adjacent single-switch routers using LLC2. DLSw dual-switch services provide:

- IP routing, permitting delivery over any available path
- TCP services, providing reliable data delivery, reduced network overhead, and flow control mechanisms to manage traffic

Packets are carried to an attached Nortel Networks DLSw node where the data is translated into Switch-to-Switch Protocol (SSP) datagrams. The data is then routed over the multiprotocol backbone to a remote Nortel Networks DLSw node using an IP routing protocol. When the SSP datagram reaches the remote Nortel Networks DLSw node, it is translated into the appropriate frame and carried to its destination.

Figure 1-7 shows how SNA devices use DLSw dual-switch services to communicate over TCP/IP. This differs from adjacent single-switch operation, which uses LLC2 on the backbone.

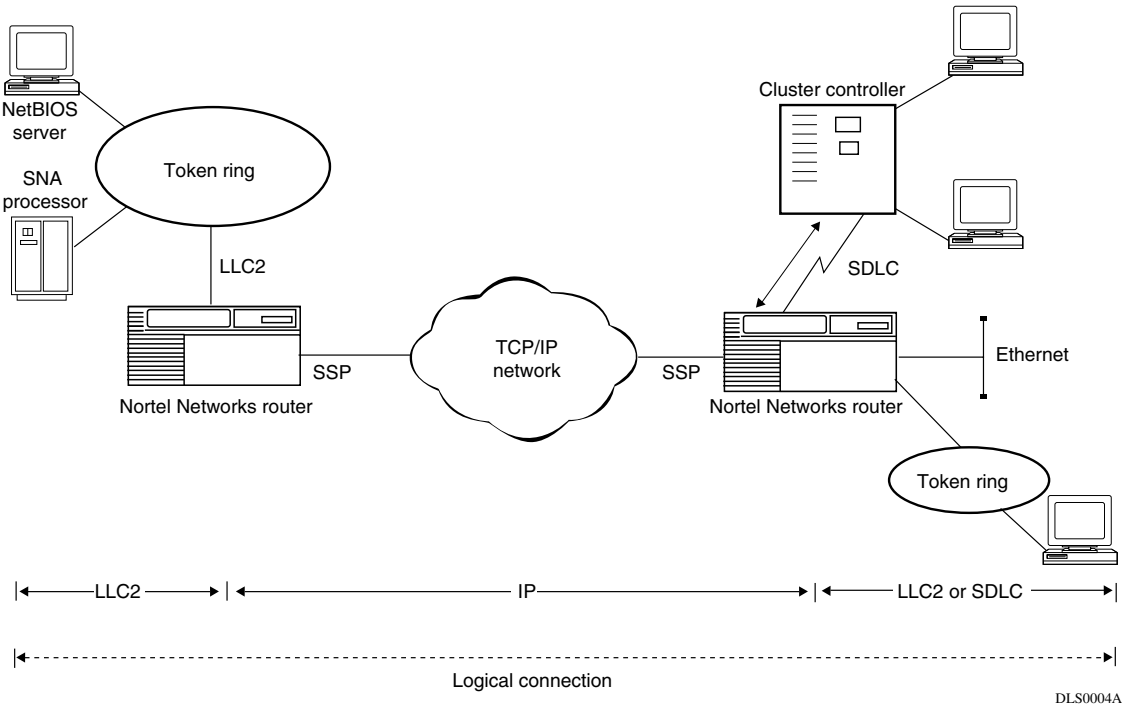

Figure 1-7. DLSw Dual-Switch Services for SNA Devices on LANs

SNA PU Descriptions

An SNA physical unit (PU) is a component of the network (or node) that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link stations) associated with the node.

Several types of PUs exist. PU 1.0, 2.0, or 2.1 devices require boundary-function assistance from an adjacent subarea node. PU 4 and 5 devices are subarea nodes. They use network addresses for routing and maintain routing tables that reflect the configuration of the network.

PU 1.0 Support

PU 1.0 devices include IBM 5251, 5294, 5394, and 5494 control unit emulations. These devices are typically seen working with AS/400s. They do not support connections on any LAN media. They use the SDLC protocol to communicate.

PU 2.0 Support

PU 2.0 devices include IBM 3174 and 3274 control units. Many PC client software packages emulate this PU type.

PU 2.1 Support

PU 2.1 devices include IBM 3174 and 3274 control units. These devices may be seen as Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking (APPN) low-entry networking nodes.

PU 4 Support

PU 4 devices include IBM 3720, 3725 and 3745 FEPs. These FEPs provide enhanced SNA services not provided by routers. The router allows connection of the FEPs using SDLC or LLC. LAN-to-LAN, SDLC-to-SDLC, LAN-to-SDLC, and SDLC-to-LAN connections are supported.

The FEPs communicate using format identifier 4 (FID4) data flows. FID4 is the SNA protocol format used between two adjacent subarea nodes. It is supported by single-switch and dual-switch operation of DLSw.

When the router is configured as a primary or secondary SDLC link station, the router supports connection to PU 4 nodes in multipoint configurations. When the router is configured as a negotiable SDLC link station, the router supports connection to PU 4 devices in point-to-point configurations. See “SDLC Support” on page 1-23 for descriptions of primary, secondary, and negotiable link stations.

To configure the router for PU 4 connectivity, you use either the Site Manager DLSw Mode and PU Type parameters or the BCC commands **mode** and **pu-type**. For instructions, see “Editing a Local Device” on page 4-29.

Note: The following operations are not supported for PU 4 links: Downline Load of the network control program (NCP) and Dump.

Figure 1-8 shows two DLSw routers. Each router connects two IBM 3745 devices: one using SDLC, and the other using token ring. The routers are connected to each other using TCP/IP.

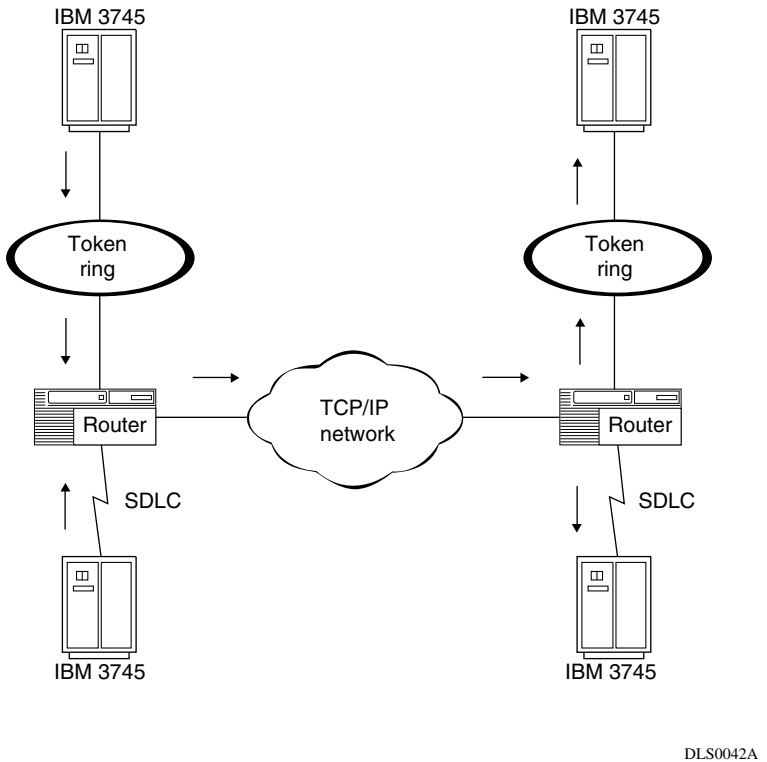

Figure 1-8. Routers Connecting IBM 3745 Devices

PU 5 Support

PU 5 is the mainframe and is fully supported as the end point in a connection to other PU types. A mainframe with an integrated communications adapter or an Open Systems adapter is a PU type 5. PU 2.0, PU 2.1, and PU 4 devices downstream from a PU 5 are supported across DLSw using either FID2 or FID4 data flows only.

OSA-2 ATM Adapter Support for SNA Connectivity

The Open Systems Adapter 2 (OSA-2) supports token ring, Ethernet, and ATM. The Nortel Networks router will operate using any of these media. This section describes only the OSA-2 ATM interface.

You use the OSA-2 to establish SNA sessions over ATM between clients and IBM hosts.

To set up your SNA network for OSA-2 over ATM:

- Configure and store several parameters in the IBM Host Configuration Dataset file (for instructions, see the documentation that came with your IBM host).
- Load the IBM host configuration onto the OSA-2 adapter (for instructions, see the documentation that came with your IBM host).

  Before you load the host configuration onto the OSA-2 adapter, you need to know the channel path ID (CHPID) for the ATM module, the unit addresses for the ATM module, and the external communications adapter (XCA) node name. The name should be different for the token ring and Ethernet emulations, if you are configuring both.
- Configure the ATM switch. (For instructions, see the documentation that came with your switch).
- Configure your routers with ATM, LLC2, DLSw, and SRB (optional).

The current implementation for OSA-2 for SNA subarea supports only a LAN emulation service for ATM (either Ethernet or token ring LANE). Any station on the network participating in the LAN contains the LAN emulation client (LEC). The OSA-2 ATM feature is an LEC for the 9672 S/390 server.

The OSA-2 ATM can provide up to two ATM LAN emulation clients (token ring or Ethernet) for its dual physical port attachment. Each logical port must be configured to support a specific mode (TCP/IP and/or SNA).

Sample Configurations Using OSA-2 ATM Adapter

In Figure 1-9, router A is configured with SRB and LLC from the client side (PC) and with SRB and ATM token ring LANE from the host side. The OSA-2 adapter on the host (IBM S/390) is configured with ATM token ring LANE.

Note: If the ATM LANE is token ring, you do not need to configure DLSw on the router. All data traffic goes over SRB for the configuration in Figure 1-9.

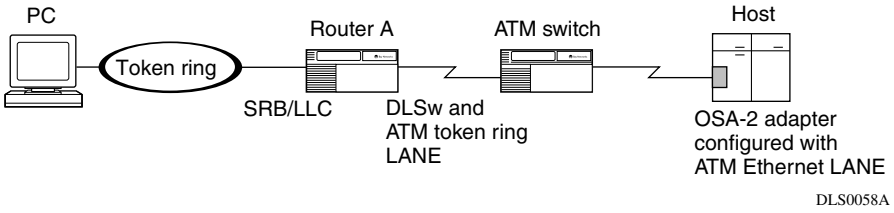

Figure 1-9. SRB over ATM Token Ring LANE

In Figure 1-10, router A is configured with SRB and LLC from the client side (PC) and with DLSw and ATM Ethernet LANE from the host side. The OSA-2 adapter on the host (IBM S/390) is configured with ATM Ethernet LANE.

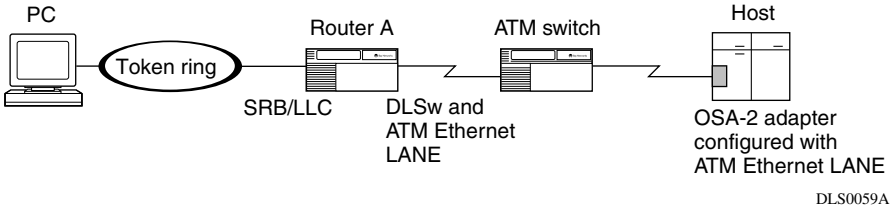

Figure 1-10. DLSw Over ATM Ethernet LANE

In Figure 1-11, router A is configured with DLSw, SRB, and LLC on the client side (PC) and with TCP/IP/PPP over a synchronous line on the host side. Router B is configured with TCP/IP/PPP over a synchronous line from the client side, and with DLSw, SRB, and ATM token ring LANE from the host side (IBM S/390). Both routers are configured for DLSw dual switch. The routers are connected to the OSA-2 adapter on the IBM host using an ATM switch. The adapter is configured with ATM token ring LANE.

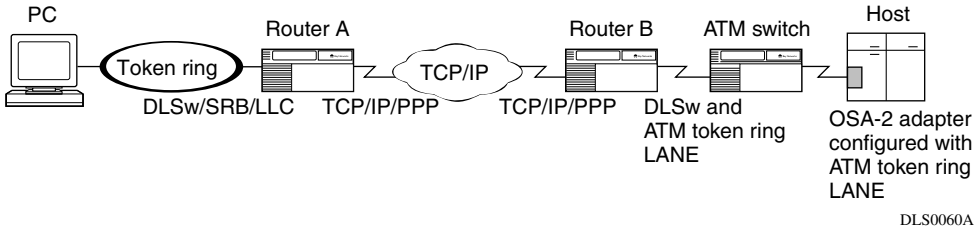

Figure 1-11. DLSw Dual Switch over ATM LANE Token Ring Using TCP/IP

LLC Support

Logical Link Control (LLC) is a standard protocol within the CCITT (now ITU-T) 8802.2 and IEEE 802.*x* family of LAN standards. Connection-oriented protocols, including IBM SNA and NetBIOS, use LLC services. Connection-oriented protocols do not have a network layer address (such as an IP subnet) to route information. Instead, before any information transfer occurs, a device on the network sends a “broadcast” or “explorer” frame to locate the session partner. From this broadcast, the network establishes a path for the data transfer.

SNA needs a connection-oriented data link layer for end-to-end packet sequencing and error control. Over wide area networks, SDLC has traditionally met this need. However, in a LAN environment, FEPs, controllers, and NetBIOS client/server stations commonly use an LLC2 layer for this purpose. To support communication among these devices, you can add LLC2 interfaces to a router configuration when configuring DLSw.

LLC is supported on the router with PU 2.0, 2.1, and 4.0 devices.

For more information on the Nortel Networks LLC implementation, see *Configuring LLC Services*.

SDLC Support

Integrated SDLC support merges SDLC traffic with the multiprotocol traffic of LANs into a single network backbone. SDLC operates in DLSw single-switch routers, or in dual switch-to-switch networks, as illustrated in Figure 1-4 on page 1-12.

Integrated SDLC conversion enables existing SDLC traffic to share a backbone network with LAN traffic without an intervening TCP/IP network. Traffic enters the DLSw router as SDLC and goes out the router as LLC2 over token ring or Ethernet. The destination end station can reside on the token ring or Ethernet network directly connected to that DLSw router. SRB can forward the traffic through the network to a destination host or end station. In this network, the local router performs the SDLC conversion, and forwards the traffic across the network to the host (Figure 1-12).

DLSw integrated SDLC supports devices configured as primary or secondary link stations to the router, as described in "Primary SDLC Support" on page 1-24 and "Secondary SDLC Support" on page 1-25. A link station is a logical connection between adjacent nodes, where one node is a primary link station and the other node is a secondary link station.

Negotiable support is available for PU 4-to-PU 4 point-to-point links, as described in "Negotiable SDLC Support" on page 1-28.

When configured as an SDLC primary device, the router polls downstream cluster controllers, such as the IBM 3174 and the IBM 5394. When configured as a secondary device, the router responds to polls from the primary device.

You can use integrated SDLC in a point-to-point or multipoint topology. Point-to-point connects one SDLC device to another. Multipoint connects several secondary SDLC devices to one primary SDLC device. You specify the topology when you configure SDLC on the synchronous circuit.

For more information on the Nortel Networks SDLC implementation, see *Configuring SDLC Services.*

Primary SDLC Support

A Nortel Networks router configured as a primary device on an SDLC link can:

- Control the data link
- Issue commands
- Initiate error recovery procedures

The primary link station addresses and sends command frames to any or all secondary link stations on the network. Each frame carries the individual or group address of the station or stations to which the frame is directed. A secondary link station receives commands and responds to primary link station polls.

In both single and dual switch-to-switch networks, you must map the addresses of the SDLC devices to token ring/802.5 addresses. To map the addresses, you configure the SDLC devices as local devices, enabling them to appear to the network as natively attached LAN devices. Chapter 4, “Customizing DLSw Services,” describes how to configure local devices.

Figure 1-12 illustrates DLSw single-switch networks where Nortel Networks routers function as primary SDLC nodes.

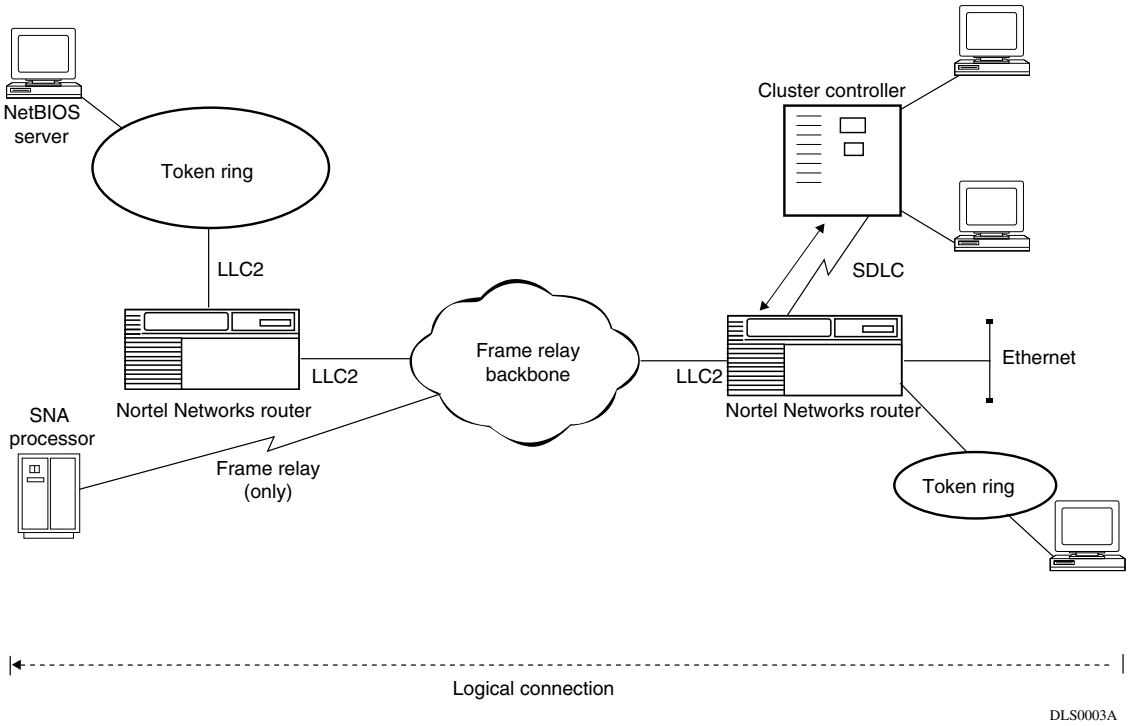

Figure 1-12. Primary SDLC Routers in Single-Switch DLSw Networks

Secondary SDLC Support

A Nortel Networks router acting as a secondary device on an SDLC link can:

- Support a single or multiple SDLC link communicating to an FEP or other SNA host
- Allow SNA devices attached to multiple remote routers to share a single SDLC link to the FEP
- Attach to the FEP directly (using a null modem cable) or using a leased line

Figure 1-13 illustrates DLSw single- and dual-switch networks where Nortel Networks routers serve as secondary SDLC nodes.

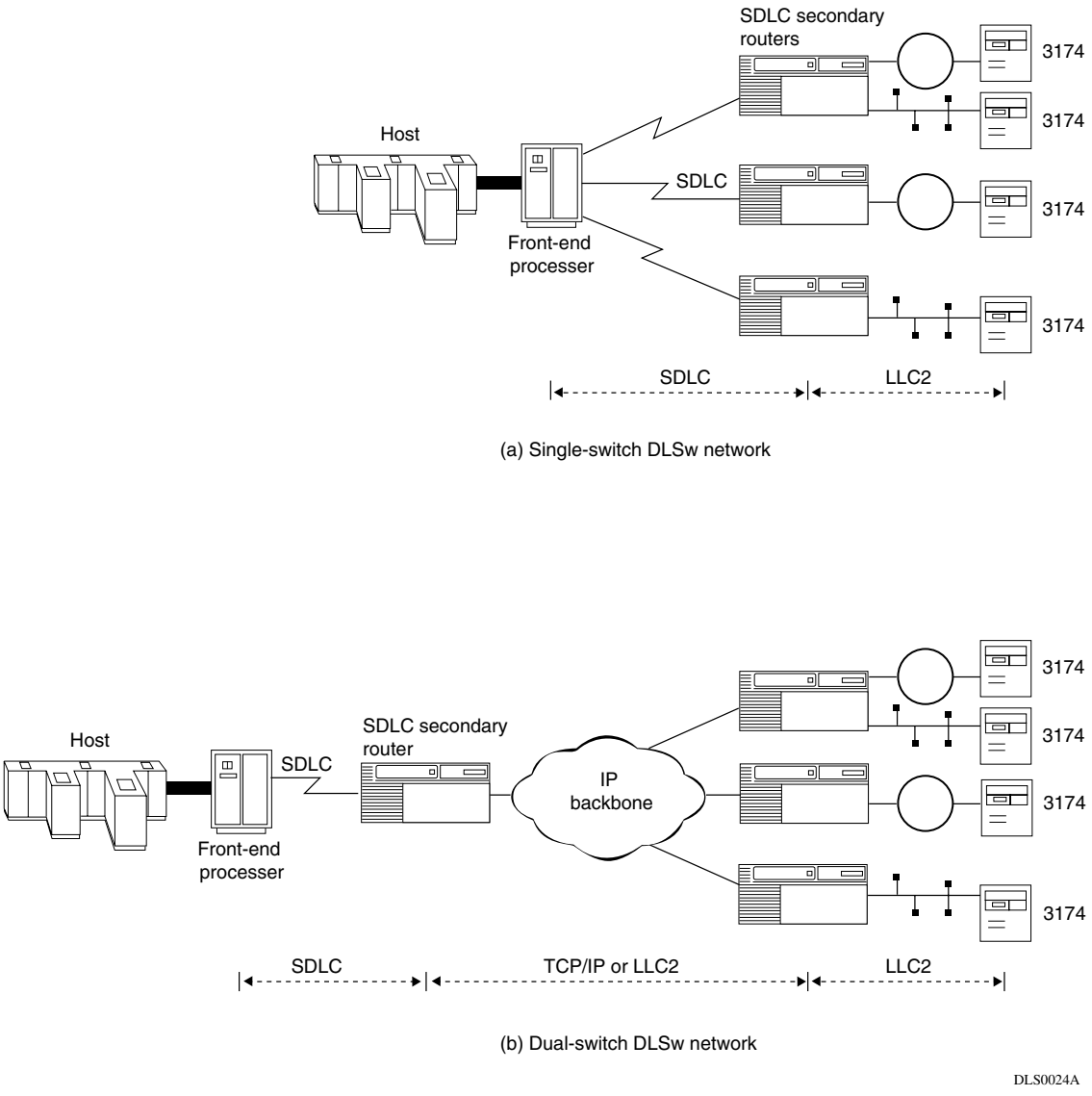

Figure 1-13. Secondary SDLC Routers in (a) Single-Switch and (b) Dual-Switch DLSw Networks

Combining Primary and Secondary SDLC

Using primary and secondary SDLC services, a network can transport existing SDLC traffic over a router-based topology that:

- Enables existing SDLC traffic to use a high-speed multiprotocol backbone network
- Simplifies the migration to a router-based network, by incorporating SDLC traffic into the multiprotocol backbone without converting the existing end stations
- Locally acknowledges the SDLC protocol at each side of the router-based network, eliminating polling and acknowledgment traffic from the network backbone
- Allows high-speed links into the SNA host, improving response time

Figure 1-14 illustrates primary and secondary SDLC using single- and dual-switch services.

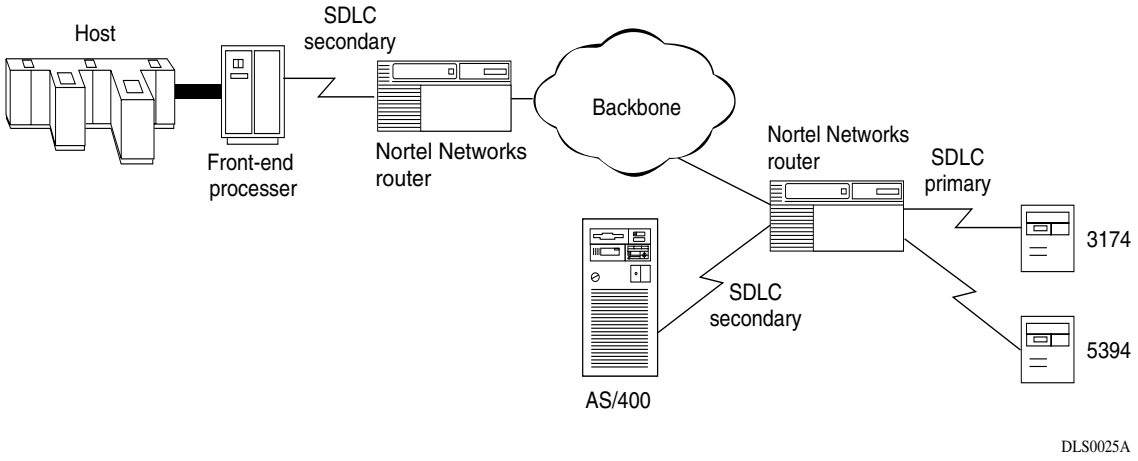

Figure 1-14. Combining Primary and Secondary SDLC

Negotiable SDLC Support

A Nortel Networks router acting as a negotiable device on an SDLC link exchanges exchange station identification (XID3) packets with another link station to negotiate which one will be primary and which secondary. Link characteristics and the subarea PU name are also exchanged. Negotiable SDLC support is limited to PU 4 communications.

Frame Relay Support

Figure 1-15 illustrates the connection of a host through a frame relay network, in a configuration with multiprotocol traffic to other locations.

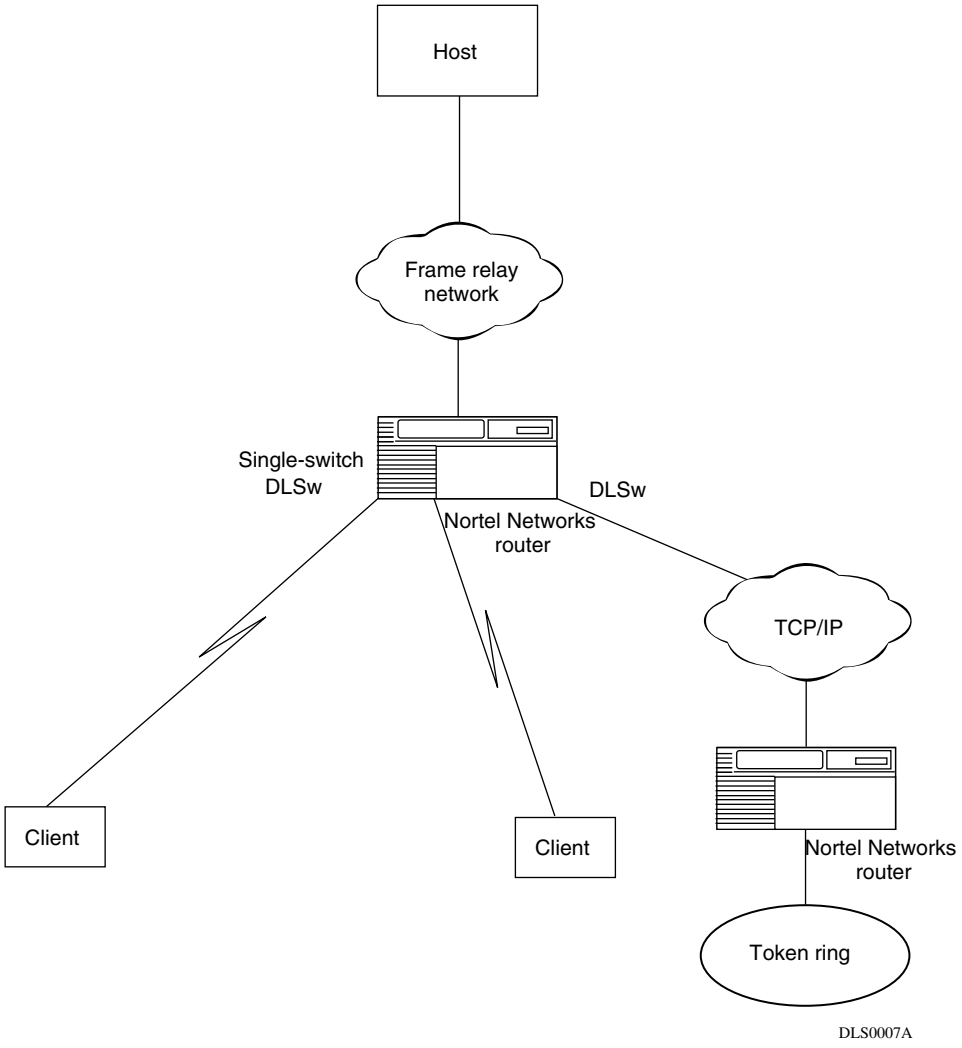

Figure 1-15. Sample Frame Relay Network

Nortel Networks provides two ways to communicate directly with an SNA processor (such as an IBM 3745 or AS/400) over frame relay:

- Boundary Network Node (BNN)
- Boundary Access Node (BAN)

Boundary Network Node (RFC 1490)

BNN refers to RFC 1490, Routed SNA over Frame Relay. This implementation of LLC2 also complies with the Frame Relay Forum 3 (FRF.3), "Multiple Protocol Encapsulation over Frame Relay Implementation Agreements," which defines how SNA traffic traverses a frame relay network.

BNN allows native SNA traffic (originating from SDLC, LAN- or WAN-attached devices) to communicate directly over public or private frame relay networks with an SNA processor. Devices can communicate with intermediate routing nodes or in a single-switch configuration function as a FRAD.

PVC Support

Since BNN does not carry the destination and source MAC addresses in the network packets, the BNN format carries the fewest number of bits per packet and yields low network overhead. Therefore, you must explicitly define the permanent virtual circuit (PVC) to carry the packet to its destination. You do this with the LLC2 frame relay mapping table. The mapping table consists of three fields:

- DLCI, which represents a frame relay PVC
- Remote MAC, which is the destination MAC address
- Local MAC, which is the source MAC address

Each entry requires that you specify the remote MAC, local MAC, or both. A packet that matches this entry is then forwarded to the specified data link connection identifier (DLCI).

SVC Support

Using switched virtual circuits (SVCs) is very similiar to the BNN PVC over frame relay implementation. However, rather than requiring PVCs to always be available, you use SVCs to connect only when there is data to transfer.

The following features are supported with the SVC implementation:

- Providing a connection only after a client requests a session (for example, through sending a test poll.)
- Disconnecting when an SVC is not in use.
- Mapping remote and local MAC addresses to E.164 or X.121 addresses.
- Directing multiple client connection requests to a single destination MAC address over a single SVC by modifying the source (local) SAP. SAPs are created at the receiving side and source MAC addresses are automatically created.

Boundary Access Node (RFC 1490)

BAN is an IBM router enhancement. BAN refers to the RFC 1490 specification for Bridged SNA over frame relay. The associated IBM NCP 7.3 enhancement is called the boundary node identifier (BNI).

Since BAN carries the destination and source MAC addresses in the network packets, this format carries more bits per packet and requires less configuration.

Standard BAN uses the SRB frame format. Nortel Networks routers select BAN source route encapsulation when you configure the frame relay network.

MAC Address Translation

MAC address translation allows you to redirect SNA and NetBIOS traffic to a different host destination address than configured on your PC. The redirection process takes place on all LLC interfaces, including token ring, Ethernet, and frame relay BAN interfaces for outgoing connections. The router continues to support MAC addresses that are not translated.

Consider this scenario: Company A is taken over by company B, and company B wants company A to use their IBM mainframe. The company A users have to configure their PCs with the new destination mainframe MAC address. With MAC address translation, the router redirects traffic destined for the original destination MAC address to the new destination MAC address.

If MAC address translation is enabled when a router receives an LLC frame, the router checks whether the destination MAC address in the frame is in the MAC Address Translation table. If the address is in the table, the router checks whether the address is configured for translation. If the address is configured for translation, the router replaces the original destination MAC address with the target destination MAC address that it finds in the table. The DLSw connection uses the new target destination address throughout the session and all the way to the new destination host.

When the router receives a session response from the host, DLSw replaces the source MAC address with the original one before it transmits the frame to LLC.

You can add and delete a translated MAC address. Any changes to the MAC address translation table affect only new connections. The existing connections stay up until they are terminated.

Figure 1-16 shows a sample network using MAC address translation to redirect traffic to two IBM mainframes using 3745 front-end processors. In this network, frame relay BAN is configured on all router interfaces. Router A has the following information configured in its MAC Address Translation table.

Original Destination MAC Address Configured in the PC	Translated Destination MAC Address
(PC 1) 400010000000	(Mainframe 1) 4FFF00000000
(PC 2) 400020000000	(Mainframe 2) 4FF200000001
(PC 3) 400105020000	(Mainframe 1) 4FFF00000000
(PC 4) 400105030000	(Mainframe 1) 4FFF00000000

The original and translated destination MAC addresses in the tables tell the routers that traffic from PC1, PC3, and PC4 will be redirected to the host with the MAC address 4FFF00000000 and that traffic from PC2 will be redirected to the host with the MAC address 4FF200000001.

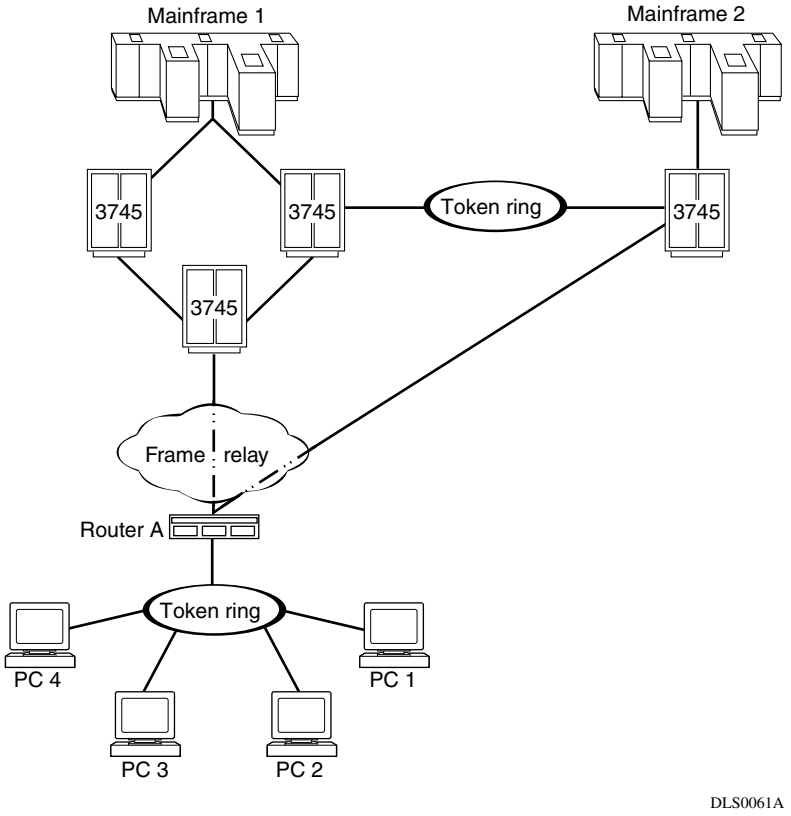

Figure 1-16. Sample Network Using MAC Address Translation

BAN2 Termination

BAN2 termination allows you to locally terminate at the router SRB and LLC-2 frames destined for a token ring or frame relay network. The router then forwards the traffic to the destination network using DLSw. (Previously, you could forward traffic only between token ring and/or frame relay networks using SRB.)

While you typically use BAN2 termination with frame relay networks, you can also use it to locally terminate any SRB-to-SRB connection. Therefore, you can locally terminate token ring-to-token ring, token ring-to-frame relay BAN, and frame relay BAN-to-frame relay BAN interfaces in a single-switch DLSw router.

Figure 1-17 shows a network using BAN2 termination to forward LLC traffic from a token ring to a frame relay network using DLSw. In this network, frame relay BAN is configured on the router interfaces (BAN allows the exchange of LLC traffic across the network). The traffic, SNA data, includes destination and source MAC addresses. If the data contains an SRB header, the RIF field is also carried across the network.

When the router receives the LLC traffic, it terminates it. At the same time, the router establishes a new LLC connection to carry the traffic over the frame relay network. If the router receives bridged traffic, it terminates the SRB RIF and creates a new one, thereby allowing for a larger bridged network.

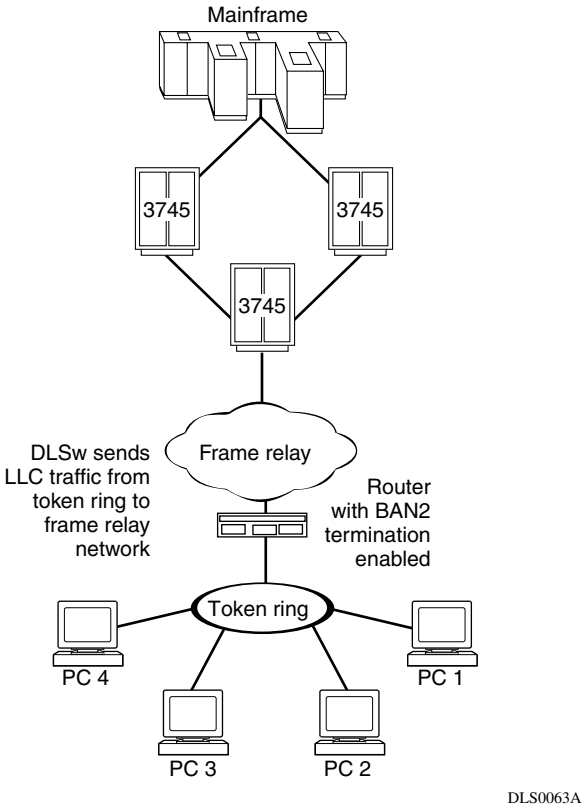

Figure 1-17. Sample Network Using BAN2 Termination

QLLC Support

QLLC provides reliable transport for SNA devices connected over an X.25 network using switched virtual circuits (SVCs). This support enables QLLC-attached devices to connect to a non-X.25 backbone, and allows non-QLLC devices to connect to an X.25 network. Both single- and dual-switch DLSw networks can operate over X.25 links using QLLC.

For detailed information about configuring QLLC prior to adding DLSw single- and dual-switch services, see *Configuring X.25 Services.*

DLSw/APPN Boundary Function

The DLSw/APPN boundary function (BF) allows DLSw to provide remote communications through an IP backbone and provide access over this backbone from enterprise-level applications using an APPN network.

The DLSw/APPN boundary function is implemented within a central APPN network node. The BF accepts traditional PU 2.0 or PU 2.1 traffic supported by DLSw and routes it over APPN to the appropriate partner, typically a mainframe-based application.

DLSw/APPN Network Configurations

The DLSw/APPN boundary function can reside wherever your APPN backbone network is located.

In Figure 1-18, for example, the DLSw/APPN boundary function resides in a regional location. This enterprise-wide network has an APPN backbone. The regional location connects to the backbone through an IP network.

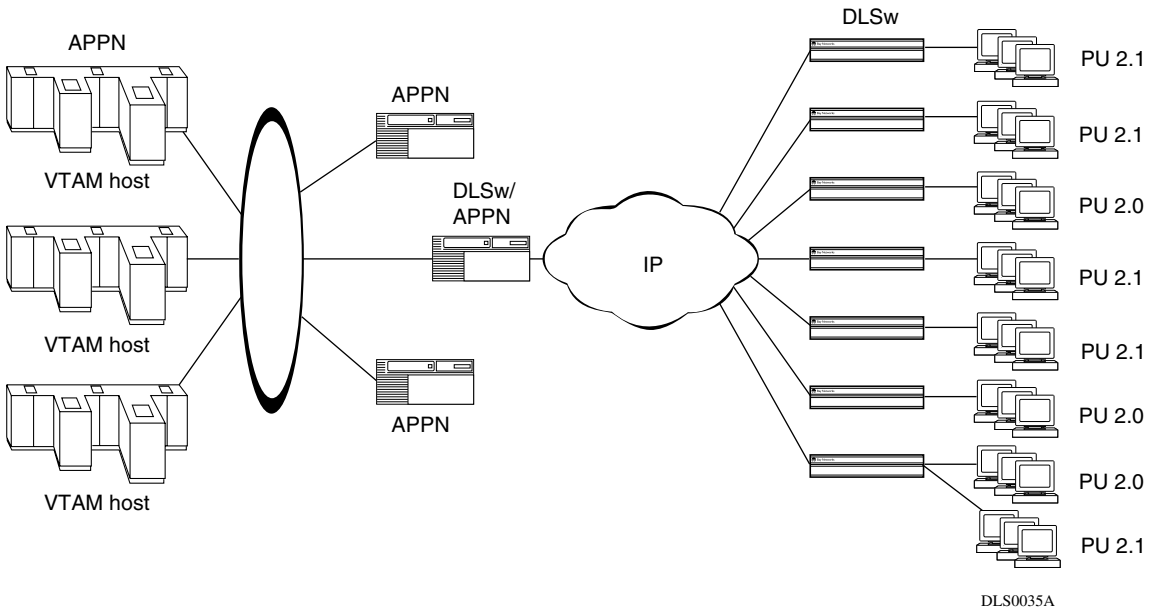

Figure 1-18. Enterprise APPN Network

DLSw/APPN Components

APPN and DLSw pass messages back and forth by means of a virtual channel connection termination (VCCT) at the data link level. Figure 1-19 shows the relationship between APPN, DLSw, and the VCCT through which they exchange messages.

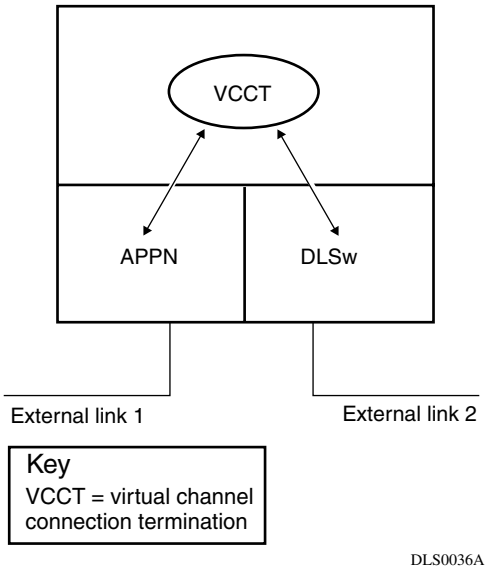

Figure 1-19. Boundary Function Virtual Circuit

APPN and DLSw send and receive messages on external links 1 and 2 and pass messages to each other through the virtual circuit.

The DLSw/APPN boundary function allows DLSw to provide remote communications -- by means of an IP backbone -- from enterprise-level applications using an APPN network.

In Figure 1-20, router 1 is running the DLSw/APPN boundary function. Router 2 is running DLSw only. The path between the host on router 1 and the PU 2.0 device on router 2 shows all the components involved in a communication between the two devices. (The dependent logical unit requestor [DLUR], a component within APPN, is required because the 3174 system is configured as PU 2.0.)

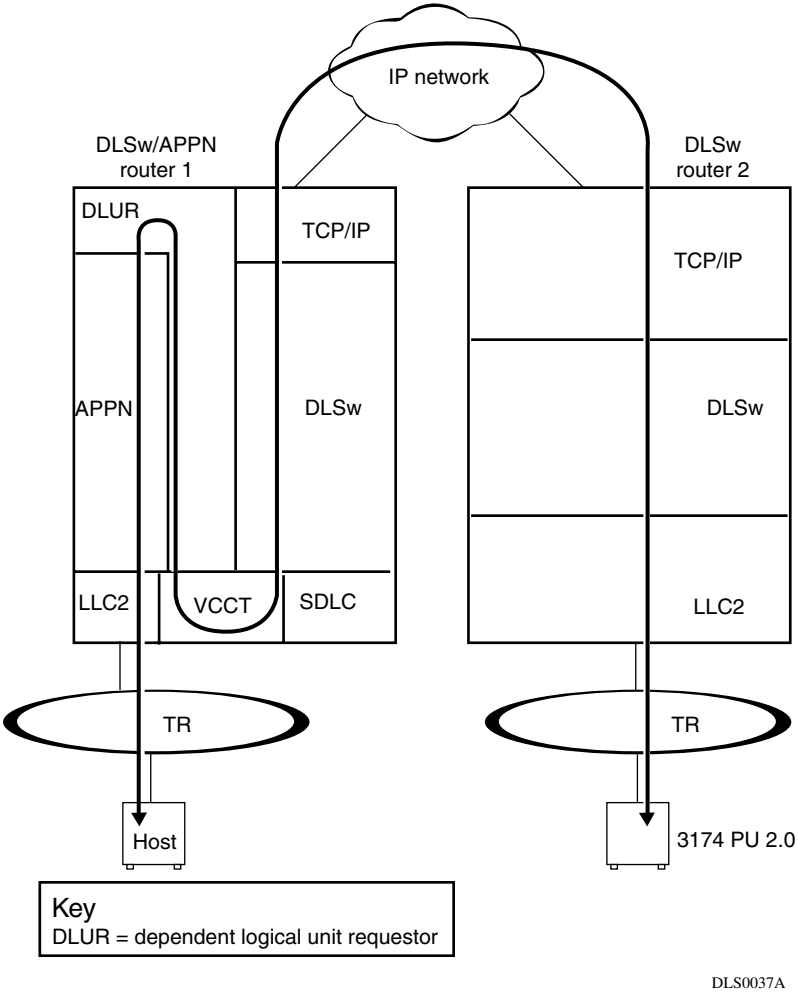

Figure 1-20. End-to-End Connection Using a DLSw/APPN Router and a DLSw Router

In Figure 1-21, routers 1 and 2 are running the DLSw/APPN boundary function. The path between the PU 2.1 device on router 1 and a similar device on router 2 shows all the components involved in a communication between the two devices.

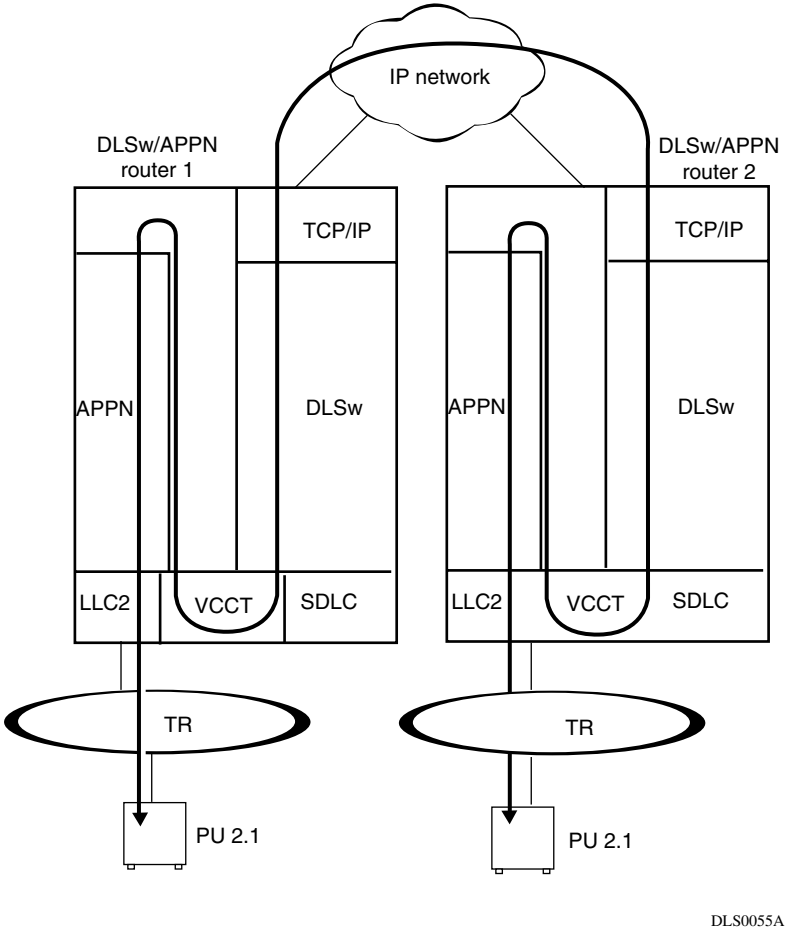

Figure 1-21. End-to-End Connection Using Two DLSw/APPN Routers

RFC 2205 RSVP Support

To ensure timely delivery of SNA traffic over an IP backbone, RSVP (Resource Reservation Protocol) allows you to reserve bandwidth specifically for use by DLSw. The RSVP function is only available for DLSw Version 2.0 (unicast) and RFC 2166 (multicast) connections; it does not support RFC 1434 or 1795 connections.

DLSw traffic can be unidirectional, meaning that most of the data flows one way, and the bandwidth for the frames going in opposite directions does not need to be reserved. RSVP allows you to have both unidirectional and bidirectional (interactive session) DLSw traffic.

Configuring DLSw RSVP Parameters

To configure RSVP, you define a sending and a receiving router. The same router can be both a sender and a receiver. The sending router specifies incoming bandwidth reservation; the receiving router specifies outgoing bandwidth reservation. For both the sending and receiving routers, you specify the following parameters:

- DLSw RSVP Support
- RSVP Mode
- Outgoing and Incoming Bandwidth
- Outgoing and Incoming Burst Size

You can specify global RSVP parameters, which provide the default values for all peers, and per-peer configuration parameters.

RSVP lets you reserve more or less bandwidth during offpeak hours to allow more customization of the network. You do this by specifying a nonpeak start and end time, the days of the week on which you want the offpeak hours to occur, and the amount of nonpeak outgoing and incoming bandwidth. You can also specify bandwidth and burst size for backup peers.

For instructions on configuring RSVP, see Chapter 4, “Customizing DLSw Services.”

Starting RSVP

To start an RSVP session, you must first establish a TCP connection between the sending and receiving routers. The routers then perform a capabilities exchange. If both routers have DLSw RSVP enabled, the sending router begins sending RSVP Path messages to the remote end. These messages allow the receiving router to issue a request to reserve bandwidth. The receiving router then supplies the necessary bandwidth parameters to the sender and issues the request to reserve bandwidth. Reservations are established when the RSVP reservation request (Resv) messages sent by the receiver reach the sender.

During the capability exchange, both the receiving and sending routers send bandwidth information and configuration settings to peer routers so that an unconfigured peer can determine whether it is a sender, a receiver, or both.

The per-peer configuration takes precedence over global configuration. If a conflict arises over how much bandwidth to reserve, the maximum amount applies. If either the sender or the receiver fails to send its reservation information, no reservation occurs; the TCP connection holds and DLSw continues to deliver data.

If an error or change occurs in the reservation, RSVP notifies both the sender and the receiver.

Figure 1-22 illustrates the initiation of RSVP for two routers. Router A is configured with RSVP; router B does not have a peer configured. The term *Capex* refers to capabilities exchange.

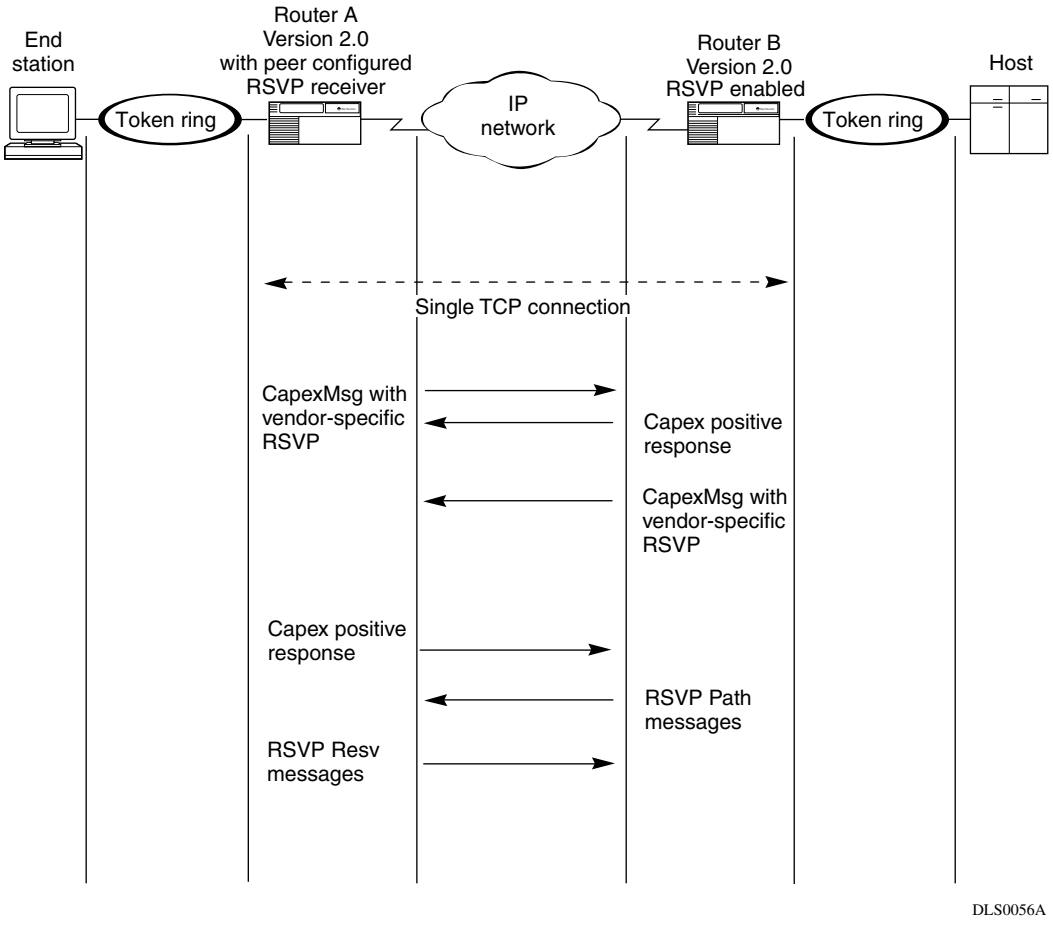

Figure 1-22. Initiating DLSw Reservations

Specifying DLSw Traffic

You identify DLSw traffic by applying outbound filters to forwarded packets. Although traffic prioritization and RSVP bandwidth reservation are different features, you can combine them to achieve the amount of DLSw flow you want. First, you configure RSVP to reserve bandwidth. Then, if you want to give a larger share of the bandwidth to a certain type of DLSw flow, you can use traffic filtering to configure that flow's queue with a larger percentage. To exclude a flow (by not reserving bandwidth for it), configure its prioritization queue with 0 percent bandwidth. Packets of such a flow are only sent when there is no congestion.

DLSw Backup Peer Support

If a TCP connection to the primary peer cannot be established, DLSw establishes a TCP connection to a backup peer, if one is configured. DLSw first checks to make sure a backup peer IP address is configured, and then initiates a new TCP connection to the backup peer. The TCP connection to the backup peer remains as long as it is needed or until the maximum connection time has expired, in which case the TCP connection breaks. DLSw will break a backup peer connection if no established DLSw connections exist or if the DLSw connections are idle (that is, no data has passed).

If a TCP connection with the primary peer is established, but then the primary peer goes down, DLSw attempts to start another SNA session by sending a message to the primary peer. If the connection fails, DLSw checks whether a backup peer is configured, and then initiates a new TCP connection to the backup peer.

You can configure backup peers for the following DLSw versions: RFC 1434, RFC 1795, DLSw Version 2.0 (unicast), or RFC 2166 (multicast). If you are using Site Manager, you select a version using the DLSw RFC Version parameter from the DLSw Basic Global Parameters window. If you are using the BCC, you set the rfc-type parameter. For instructions on setting these parameters, see Chapter 3, "Starting DLSw Services."

For instructions on configuring a backup peer for RFC 2166 (multicast), as well as for the other DLSw versions, see Chapter 4, "Customizing DLSw Services."

DLSw Filtering

Nortel Networks provides two prioritization mechanisms that affect DLSw traffic:

- DLSw prioritization
- Protocol prioritization

DLSw Prioritization

DLSw prioritization allows you to prioritize traffic within DLSw based on predefined or user-defined fields. Examples of DLSw prioritization criteria include:

- Source and destination service access point (SAP). Use this field to assign NetBIOS traffic (SAP 0xF0) to a lower priority than SNA traffic.
- Source and destination MAC address. Use this field to provide host-bound traffic preference over other traffic.
- Any field in the SNA transmission header (TH) and response/request header (R/RH). Use this field to provide class of service (COS) priority preference.

You can also prioritize traffic based on any values within the headers and data packets.

For information on implementing DLSw prioritization on a Nortel Networks router, see Chapter 2, “DLSw Implementation Notes.” For instructions on configuring DLSw prioritization, see Chapter 4, “Customizing DLSw Services.”

Protocol Prioritization

You can use protocol prioritization to transmit DLSw traffic ahead of other traffic on an individual synchronous line interface. You can prioritize specific types of DLSw traffic, such as:

- Ethernet
- Frame relay
- SDLC
- Token ring
- Other SRB traffic

Note: You can apply both circuit-level and TCP-level prioritization to DLSw traffic. Note that TCP-level prioritization alone does not give DLSw traffic precedence over other routing protocols. For information about circuit-level prioritization, see *Configuring Traffic Filters and Protocol Prioritization*.

Chapter 2
DLSw Implementation Notes

This chapter provides important information about the Nortel Networks DLSw implementation. If you are configuring DLSw on a network for the first time, you should review this chapter. It covers the following topics:

Topic	Page
DLSw and Other Subsystems	2-2
Combining DLSw and SRB	2-2
DLSw and Bridging Services	2-6
Parallel Bridge and DLSw Paths	2-9
Multiple DLSw Peers on a LAN	2-10
Memory Requirements	2-10
TCP Considerations	2-11
Flow Control	2-12
DLSw Packaging	2-13
DLSw Prioritization	2-14
Backup Peers	2-21

DLSw and Other Subsystems

A DLSw network configuration uses the services of other network subsystems. When you select DLSw on an interface, the router software automatically selects the required subsystems. In some configurations, the software requires that you edit the parameters associated with these subsystems. Some parameters have default values that you can either accept or edit. To simplify the editing of additional parameters from multiple subsystems, the software combines these parameters with the DLSw configuration screens.

Selecting DLSw may enable the following subsystems:

- A data link control subsystem, such as LLC2 (for LAN media and frame relay), SDLC, QLLC, or APPN boundary function
- SRB or bridge subsystems
- TCP and IP subsystems (dual-switch only), where DLSw uses TCP/IP to ensure reliable data delivery

Also, when you enable DLSw for the first time on a Nortel Networks router, the software automatically displays a set of DLSw screens. These screens display parameters that DLSw requires before it can successfully communicate on the network. These parameters include:

- DLSw global
- DLSw interface
- Slot table

Combining DLSw and SRB

A router running DLSw can communicate with a router running in an SRB configuration. Multiple SRB networks can be interconnected locally or across a TCP/IP backbone using DLSw (Figure 2-1).

DLSw with SRB allows up to 13 total hops. This means that 6 hops are allowed on each side of the DLSw network, plus 1 hop reserved exclusively for DLSw. All other rules for configuring SRB networks using Nortel Networks routers apply. For detailed information on SRB, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.

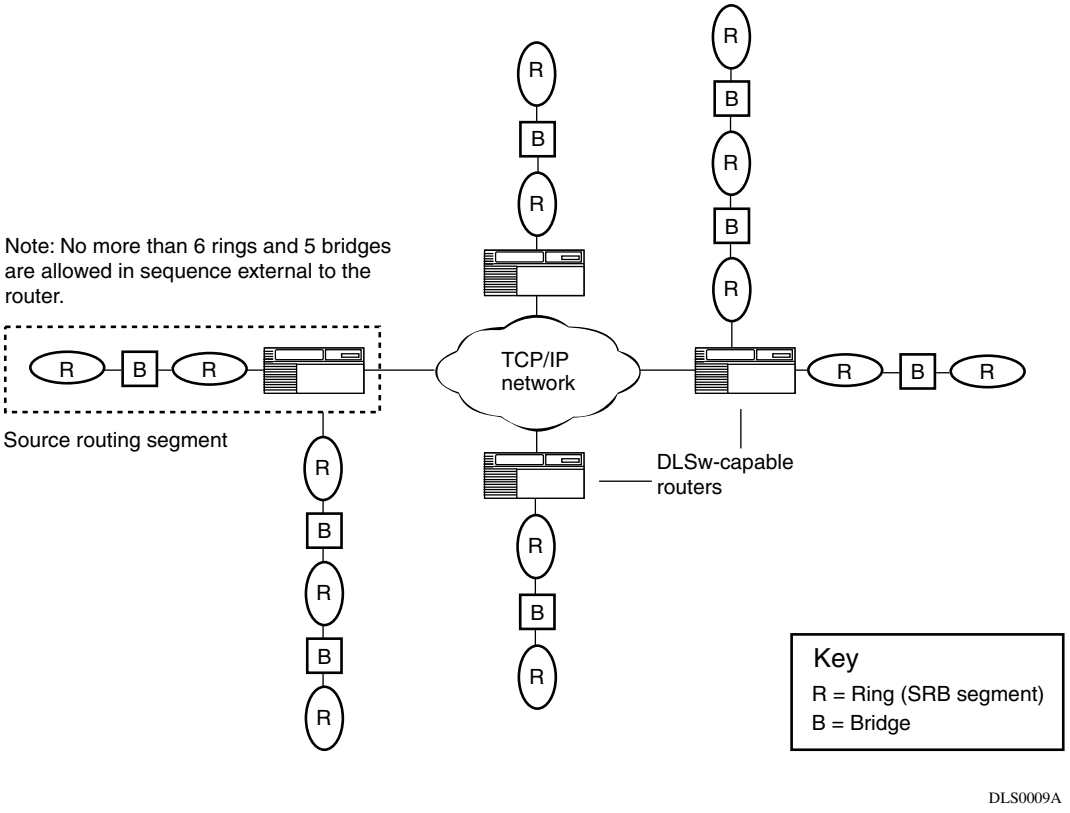
Note: No more than 6 rings and 5 bridges are allowed in sequence external to the router.
Source routing segment
TCP/IP network
DLSw-capable routers
Key
R = Ring (SRB segment)
B = Bridge
DLS0009A

Figure 2-1. DLSw-Capable Routers on an IP Backbone

For frame relay networks to use SRB, you must configure the DLSw router for BAN to use source route encapsulation. Figure 2-2 illustrates a sample DLSw and SRB network.

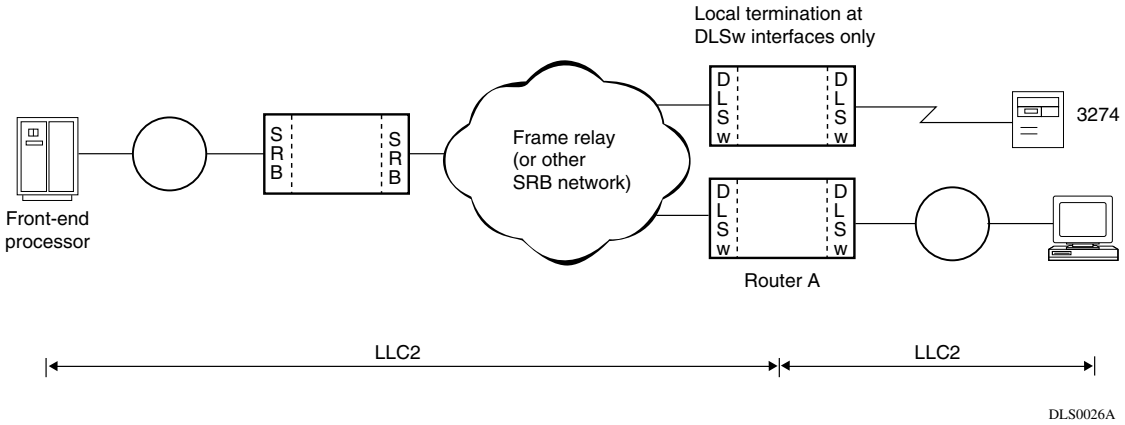

Figure 2-2. Sample DLSw and SRB Network

For mixed topologies, an end-to-end connection path includes an SRB and a non-SRB LAN. In such cases, do not exceed the maximum number of SRB LAN and bridge elements allowed on the SRB LAN side of the connection path. For detailed information on SRB, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.

Virtual Rings

Just as each physical token ring in a source routing network has an associated ring ID, the DLSw network has a *virtual ring ID*. You enter this ring ID with the IP Virtual Ring parameter.

The virtual ring also has an associated MTU size. The Virtual Ring MTU parameter specifies a maximum size for frames sent from local systems to systems on remote source routing networks. Use as a value for the MTU the *smallest* frame size supported on any remote source routing segment in your network.

You can access and edit the Site Manager parameters DLSw IP Virtual Ring and Virtual Ring MTU through the DLSw Global Parameters window, and the BCC parameters virtual-ring and virtual-ring-mtu from the dlsw global prompt.

Note: Site Manager requires you to enter a value for the DLSw IP Virtual Ring parameter, even if your network includes only Ethernet/802.3 circuits configured for access to DLSw services.

Count the IP virtual ring as one ring in each source routing segment attached to your TCP/IP network. You count the IP virtual ring first rather than last, to avoid configuring source routing segments that already contain more than 8 ring elements.

For more information on the DLSw IP Virtual Ring and Virtual Ring MTU parameters, see Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."

DLSw and SRB on a Circuit

On an SRB circuit with DLSw services enabled (Figure 2-3), the following rules apply:

- Upon receiving an explorer frame that contains a DLSw-specific destination SAP address, DLSw and SRB attempt concurrently to locate the requested program entity:
  - -- DLSw searches the network for a route to the target system by forwarding the packet to all local DLSw interfaces and all known remote DLSw routers.
  - -- SRB looks for a bridged path to the target system using standard source route bridge broadcasts.
- DLSw or SRB, whichever receives a response first, takes precedence. The slower subsystem ceases any further attempts to support a connection to the target program.

Note: It is possible to configure SRB traffic filters to drop traffic from the SRB path while permitting connection over DLSw.

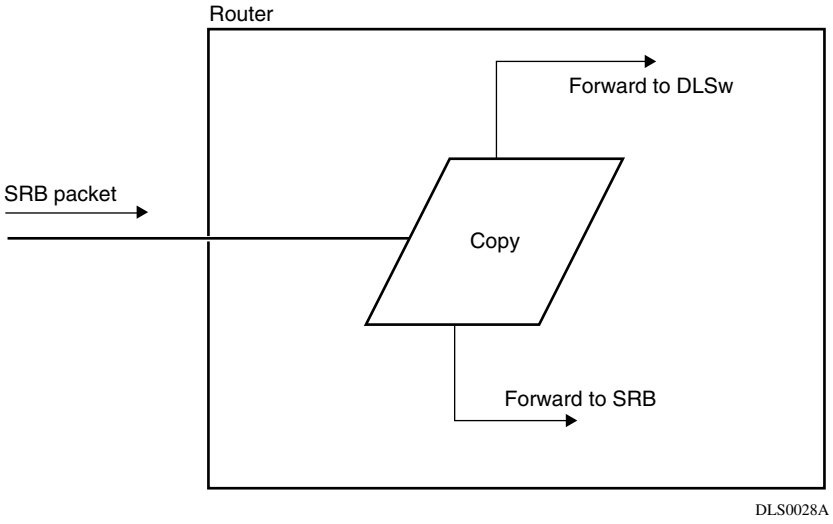

Figure 2-3. DLSw and Source Route Bridging on SRB Circuits

DLSw and Bridging Services

This section presents the different types of bridging services that coexist on a circuit with DLSw, and explains any differences in TEST (test) or explorer frame handling on these circuits. This information is useful when you examine traffic on LANs locally attached to the router.

DLSw on an Ethernet/802.3 Circuit

The router supports DLSw configured on an Ethernet/802.3 circuit. The DLSw software provides bridging services between Ethernet/802.3 LAN segments locally attached to the same router.

The DLSw interface takes precedence over the transparent bridge interface whenever the destination SAP address identified in a TEST frame received from the local circuit already exists in the router's DLSw configuration. In this case, only the DLSw interface:

- Captures the locally received TEST frame
- Attempts to locate the destination SAP address specified in that frame

The transparent bridge interface on the same circuit with DLSw never sees TEST frames that contain destination SAP addresses intended for DLSw (Figure 2-4). However, SAP addresses intended for DLSw can pass from one local Ethernet interface to another over DLSw. Therefore, non-DLSw SAPs will be transparently bridged between transparent bridge interfaces, while DLSw forwards SAPs between interfaces.

You configure transparent bridge services independently of DLSw services on the router, as appropriate for the topology of your network.

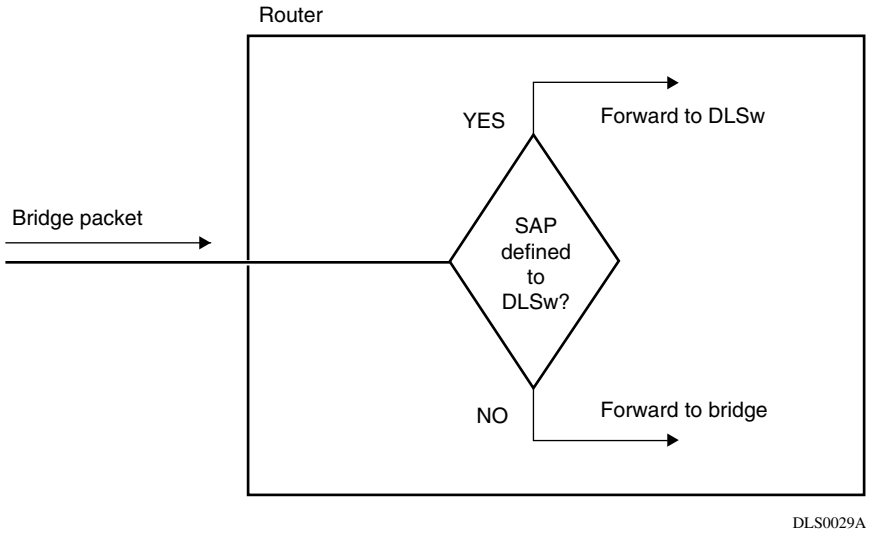

Figure 2-4. DLSw and Transparent Bridging on Ethernet/802.3 Circuits

DLSw with Translation Bridge

The router supports DLSw and translation bridge services on an Ethernet/802.3 circuit (Figure 2-5). You configure translation bridge services independently of DLSw services on the router, as appropriate for the topology of your network.

To an end-user system on an SRB circuit, the translation bridge looks like a source routing bridge. To an end-user system on an Ethernet/802.3 circuit, the translating bridge looks like a transparent bridge.

.

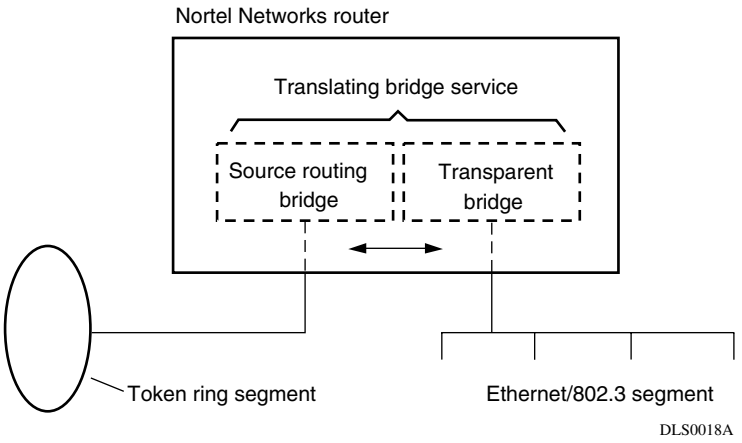

Figure 2-5. Translation Bridge Services

The translation bridge service:

- Supports communication between systems on SRB and Ethernet/802.3 segments locally attached to the same router
- Maps between SRB and Ethernet/802.3 framing requirements

Using DLSw Independently of the Translation Bridge

You can use DLSw independently of the translation bridge to allow an Ethernet-attached device to communicate with a device attached to an SRB network such as token ring. DLSw provides local termination, while the translation bridge provides the end-to-end connection. The translation bridge supports the bridge media, while DLSw supports the Ethernet networks.

Note: If you enable BAN2 termination (see Chapter 4 for instructions), DLSw locally terminates SRB and LLC2 frames at the router. The router then forwards the traffic to the token ring network using DLSw.

In Figure 2-6, router A uses DLSw to convert traffic between the locally attached Ethernet and token ring interfaces. The token ring and Ethernet-attached devices also use DLSw to communicate with Ethernet devices attached to router C.

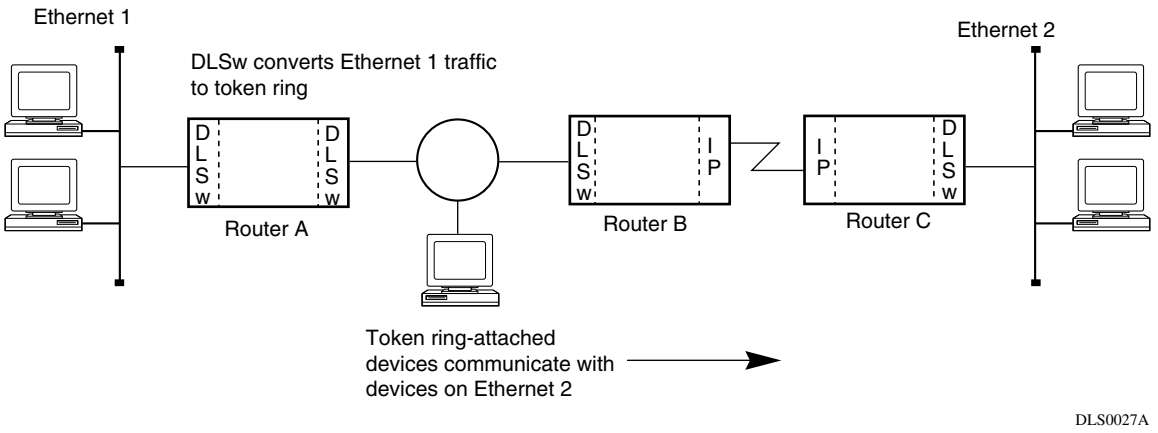

Figure 2-6. Independent DLSw/Translation Bridge Network

Parallel Bridge and DLSw Paths

If a valid bridging path already exists between two LANs, *do not* configure a parallel DLSw connection path between the same two LANs (Figure 2-7). Parallel data paths allow frames to traverse the LANs twice which, in turn, may confuse systems on the associated LAN segments.

If a parallel path is required for migration purposes, traffic filters must be used to prevent explorers carried by DLSw from being carried in parallel over the SRB network.

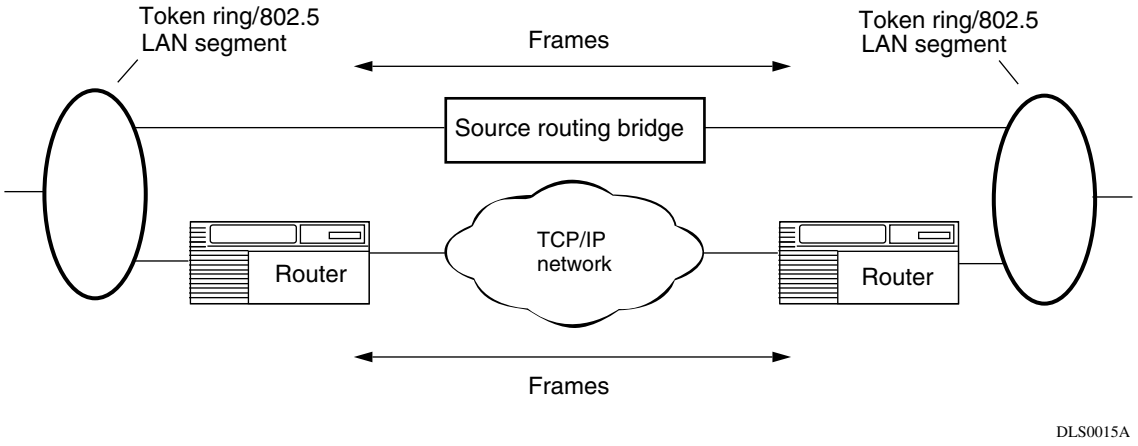

Figure 2-7. DLSw Services in Parallel with a Source Routing Bridge

Multiple DLSw Peers on a LAN

You can configure two or more DLSw nodes on the same SRB LAN. With this configuration, each DLSw peer reaches a different set of remote NetBIOS and SNA systems. In this case:

- Do *not* define a TCP connection between these data link switches.
- Assign the same virtual ring IDs to each peer.

Taking these precautions prevents frames sent by one DLSw node from propagating through the other DLSw node on the same SRB LAN.

Note: Do not configure multiple data link switches on an Ethernet/802.3 LAN. DLSw over Ethernet/802.3 LANs does not provide loop prevention.

Memory Requirements

DLSw provides buffering of LLC2 packets in single-switch mode, and additional buffering of TCP packets in dual-switch mode. Therefore, DLSw can use a significant amount of memory.

To limit the memory consumption, Nortel Networks provides several mechanisms, including:

- LLC2 Max Links parameter -- Allows the network administrator to limit the number of LLC2 stations *per interface*. See *Configuring LLC Services*.
- DLSw Max Slot Sessions parameter -- Allows the network administrator to limit the number of LLC2 stations *per slot*. For instructions on accessing and editing the Max Slot Sessions (DLSw global) parameter, see Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."
- DLSw Version 2.0 or RFC 2166 -- Use to make bidirectional TCP connections to reduce the amount of memory used for TCP connections.
- Site Manager Statistics Manager or the BCC show commands **show dlsw slots** and **show llc2 interfaces** -- Use to view the attributes wfDlsSlotHiWaterSessions and wfLlcInterfaceHiWaterLinks. These attributes allow you to obtain the highest number of sessions on a slot or an interface that were ever active.

For more information about DLSw memory usage, contact the Nortel Networks Technical Solutions Center.

TCP Considerations

TCP timers allow you to configure DLSw to periodically give TCP data to transmit if a connection is inactive for a period of time. TCP determines a lost connection (either a failed link with no rerouting possible or an unavailable remote router) based on TCP attempts to deliver this data. If TCP does not receive an acknowledgment after a series of retries, it declares the connection down and informs DLSw. DLSw then manages the currently active sessions.

There are four main configuration parameters associated with TCP timers:

- KeepAlive Time
- KeepAlive Retry Timer
- KeepAlive Retries
- TCP Inact Time

For information about the parameters, refer to Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."

Flow Control

DLSw uses the following flow control mechanisms to provide reliable end-to-end delivery of packets:

- LLC2 flow control
- TCP flow control
- DLSw RFC 1434 fixed and RFC 1795 adaptive pacing

LLC2 and TCP continue to assert flow control until congestion clears on a given TCP connection.

The default settings for system parameters relevant to LLC2 and TCP flow control are suitable for the majority of your DLSw service requirements.

LLC2 Flow Control

The LLC2 protocol interface provides a bidirectional window and an SAP credit allocation. Together these manage flow control on individual LLC2 connections between the router and LAN-attached SNA or NetBIOS systems.

The SAP window attempts to limit the number of outstanding frames queued for transmission to a remote end station from a local end station at this SAP address, as follows:

1. As the local end station sends frames that the remote end station has yet to acknowledge, a counter on the remote DLSw switch increments.
2. When this counter reaches half the value specified in the SAP Window parameter, the remote DLSw switch sends a flow control indication back to the local DLSw switch. This step is actually part of DLSw RFC 1434 fixed flow control.
3. The local DLSw switch sends RNR (receiver not ready) messages to the local end station to control the flow of the session.
4. As the remote end station acknowledges frames, the counter on the remote DLSw switch decrements.
5. After the remote end station acknowledges all outstanding frames, the remote DLSw switch sends an end-flow-control indication back to the local DLSw switch.

6. The local DLSw switch then sends an RR (receiver ready) message to the local end station, thereby allowing it to send more frames.

TCP Flow Control

Each pair of TCP connections between DLSw peers carries data from many LLC2 sessions. When congestion occurs on the TCP/IP network between DLSw peers, TCP:

- Reduces or closes its transmit window
- Signals the local and remote LLC2 interfaces to assert flow control on any LLC2 connections associated with the congested TCP connections

DLSw Flow Control

A counter on the remote DLSw switch increments as the local end station sends frames that the remote end station has yet to acknowledge. When the counter reaches half the value specified in the SAP Window parameter, the remote DLSw switch sends a flow control indication back to the local DLSw switch. For RFC 1434, the flow control indication is an Enter Busy SSP message.

DLSw Packaging

In DLSw dual-switch configurations, packaging allows multiple DLSw frames (consisting of user data and the DLSw SSP header) to be placed into a single TCP/IP frame. This provides two performance benefits:

- Reduces the number of TCP/IP encapsulation program executions. This results in fewer router cycles when processing DLSw information.
- Reduces the amount of TCP/IP overhead per DLSw frame. Instead of 52 bytes of overhead per information frame (32 for TCP, 20 for IP), a single TCP/IP package carries multiple frames.

With DLSw packaging, a packet may be delayed for a short period while the router waits to see whether there are any more packets routed to the same destination peer. This delay can increase network latency. However, the performance benefits increase the number of packets that can be delivered across the network, increasing response time. DLSw packaging is important for networks with many LAN/WAN segments and for networks with slow WAN links.

For detailed information on configuring DLSw packaging parameters, refer to Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."

DLSw Prioritization

Nortel Networks routers enable you to prioritize DLSw traffic by configuring priority queues for DLSw peers. You apply DLSw prioritization by using outbound filters.

This section provides guidelines for implementing DLSw TCP-level prioritization.

Protocol Prioritization Overview

Outbound traffic filters act on packets that the router sends on a synchronous interface to a WAN. Outbound traffic filter actions let you direct traffic into delivery queues of varying precedence. Applying a priority queue action to an outbound filter is called *protocol prioritization*. These outbound filters are often called *priority filters*.

As a router operates, network traffic from a variety of sources converges at an interface. Without protocol prioritization, the router transmits packets in a first in first out (FIFO) order. Site Manager's protocol prioritization features allow you to instruct the router to use a different transmit order for specified ranges of packets on an individual interface.

With protocol prioritization, the router sorts traffic into queues according to priority filters that you configure. For most traffic, you configure priority filters on an outbound interface. If a queue is full or you have configured an outbound drop filter, the router discards (*clips*) the traffic. For DLSw traffic, you can also create priority queues for DLSw peers; the router cannot clip DLSw traffic.

The router holds the sorted packets in priority queues. It then uses a dequeuing allocation algorithm to drain the queues and transmit traffic.

Priority queues do not affect traffic as it is entering the router, but rather affect the sequence in which data leaves an interface. For this reason, protocol prioritization is considered an outbound filter mechanism.

Types of Protocol Prioritization

There are two separate implementations of protocol priority queuing. For all synchronous protocols that support outbound traffic filters, Nortel Networks supports a high, normal, and low priority queue at the circuit interface level. For inbound and outbound DLSw traffic, Nortel Networks also supports 1 to 10 queues at the TCP level for DLSw peers.

Using existing protocol prioritization support, you can prioritize DLSw traffic before other protocols. DLSw protocol prioritization gives preference to specific types of DLSw traffic, such as:

- Ethernet
- Frame relay
- SDLC
- Token ring
- Other SRB traffic

Note: You can apply both circuit-level and TCP-level prioritization to DLSw traffic. Note that TCP-level prioritization alone does not give DLSw traffic precedence over other routing protocols. For information about circuit-level prioritization, see *Configuring Traffic Filters and Protocol Prioritization*.

DLSw Priority Queues

This section describes how DLSw protocol prioritization works and defines DLSw terms.

Although similar to the existing circuit-level protocol prioritization, DLSw prioritization is not limited to synchronous interfaces and does not operate at the driver level. DLSw prioritization occurs before TCP sequences packets, where the data link control (LLC2 or SDLC) and TCP function.

The router sorts packets into priority queues as described in "The Enqueuing Process" on page 2-16. The router then drains (*dequeues*) the priority queues to transmit packets according to a weighted allocation algorithm, as described in "The Dequeuing Process" on page 2-17.

Based on the needs of your site, you can configure up to 10 queues for each DLSw peer. You can create queues for traffic with specific MAC or SAP address ranges or, for SNA traffic, from criteria in the SNA transmission header (FID2 and FID4). You determine whether a queue applies to all DLSw peers or to one or more specific configured peers.

Default and Peer-Specific DLSw Queues

To set the way the router handles priority queues for *all* DLSw traffic (including unconfigured peers), you use the default DLSw queue configuration. To customize the handling of queued traffic for a *particular* configured peer, you configure peer-specific priority queues that apply to that peer's IP address only.

The default priority queue configuration applies to all configured DLSw peers *except* those individual peers for which you configure a custom priority queue. Peer-specific queues take precedence over the default queue.

The Enqueuing Process

The router enqueues packets that match a DLSw priority filter as follows:

1. Applies filter rules
2. Stamps packets with a queue number
3. Places packets in appropriate queues

The router holds packets in the assigned priority queue according to how you configure DLSw protocol prioritization.

Based on the needs of your site, you can configure up to 10 queues (Q0 to Q9) for each DLSw peer. For example, you can assign a separate queue for each filter criterion, for specific address ranges, or for particular DLSw peers.

When you enable DLSw protocol prioritization, you distribute the available bandwidth for a configured DLSw peer among its priority queues. The combined bandwidth of each peer's queues totals 100 percent.

By default, there are two DLSw priority queues: Q0 receives 60 percent of the bandwidth and Q1 receives 40 percent.

Nonordered Queues

Although Site Manager numbers the DLSw priority queues, the queue number hierarchy does not determine priority. You configure both the number of queues for each DLSw peer and the percentage of bandwidth assigned to each queue. For example, you can assign 50 percent of available bandwidth to Q3 and 25 percent each to Q1 and Q0.

The Dequeuing Process

The algorithm for DLSw bandwidth allocation is called *weighted dequeuing*. With weighted dequeuing, packets at the front of the protocol prioritization queues enter a *dequeue list* and receive a weighted score. Packets with the lowest scores are transmitted first.

By distributing the selection of packets from all queues, weighted dequeuing is more stable than the algorithms used for circuit-level WAN protocol prioritization.

One goal of weighted dequeuing is to send small packets ahead of large packets, without violating the bandwidth of each queue or depriving large packets. The algorithm accomplishes this by putting smaller packets ahead of larger packets by simultaneously considering how long the larger packets have been in the dequeue list. A large packet accumulates credit (lowering its weighted score) as each smaller packet gets ahead of it, and eventually the larger packet moves to the front of the dequeue list.

The Dequeue List

Three factors determine a packet's weighted score:

- Size of the packet
- Percent of bandwidth allocated to the packet's queue
- Time spent in the dequeue list

The dequeuing algorithm calculates a packet's dequeue weight using the following formula:

$$\text{Weight} = \frac{\text{Size of packet}}{\text{Bandwidth \%}} - \text{Time in dequeue list}$$

Weighted Dequeuing Algorithm

Weighted dequeuing works as follows:

1. Each priority queue enters its first (oldest) entry on a dequeue list.
2. The dequeue list orders the packets according to a weighted score.
3. TCP requests DLSw packets.
4. The router sends the requested number of packets or bytes to TCP from the top of the dequeue list, up to the configured queue limit.
5. TCP transmits the packets.
6. The sequence repeats at step 1.

Figure 2-8 illustrates weighted dequeuing.

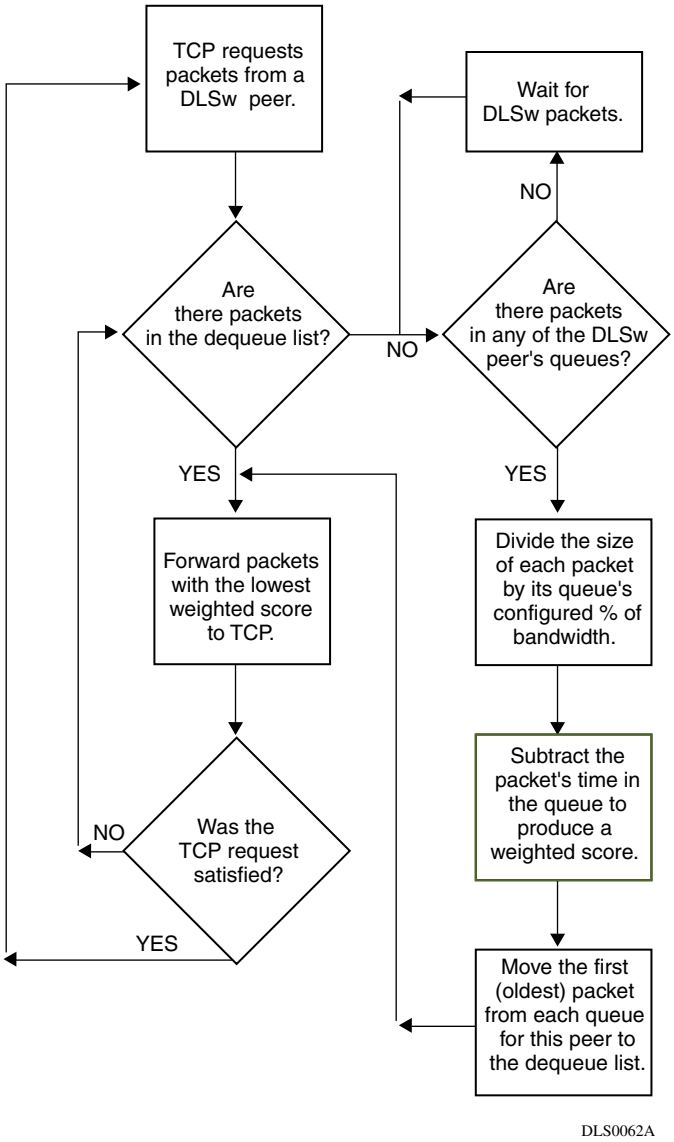
TCP requests packets from a DLSw peer.
Are there packets in the dequeue list?
NO
Are there packets in any of the DLSw peer's queues?
Wait for DLSw packets.
NO
YES
YES
Forward packets with the lowest weighted score to TCP.
Divide the size of each packet by its queue's configured % of bandwidth.
Subtract the packet's time in the queue to produce a weighted score.
Was the TCP request satisfied?
NO
YES
Move the first (oldest) packet from each queue for this peer to the dequeue list.
DLS0062A

Figure 2-8. Weighted Dequeuing

Tuning DLSw Protocol Prioritization

This section explains how congestion control and queue depth affect DLSw prioritization results for your network. “Customizing the Default Queue Configuration” on page 4-65 and “Customizing Specific DLSw Peer Queues” on page 4-68 show how to use the Configuration Manager to configure these values.

DLSw Priority Queues and Congestion Control

Because the router cannot clip DLSw traffic without breaking the DLSw session, DLSw protocol prioritization includes an internal congestion control feature to:

- Temporarily save overflow packets in memory until the appropriate priority queue can handle them
- Notify DLSw to stop and start the flow of packets

There must be sufficient memory available for congestion control to prevent clipping. The less congestion, the better the queue performance.

Queue Depth

Queue depth is the configurable number of packets that each DLSw priority queue can hold. The default value is 50 packets, regardless of packet size. When you set the queue depth, you assign buffers that hold the packets in the DLSw queues. Using Site Manager parameters, you configure the maximum queue buffers and the percentage of bandwidth for each queue.

To determine whether there are enough buffers for the DLSw traffic flow on your network, examine the following protocol prioritization statistics that the router keeps for each DLSw priority queue:

- DLSw HiWater Packets Mark -- The greatest number of packets that have been in each queue.
- DLSw Congestion Control Count -- The number of packets that the router has discarded from each queue. The router discards packets from full priority queues.

Generally, if a queue’s HiWater Packets Mark is close to or equal to its queue depth, and its Congestion Control Count is high, you have not assigned enough buffers to that queue.

Backup Peers

You use the backup peer feature if you cannot establish a TCP connection to the primary peer. The TCP connection to the backup peer lasts as long as needed or until the connection time expires and the connection ends. DLSw will break a backup connection if no primary connections are in effect or if they are idle (that is, if no data has passed). You can configure backup peers for the following DLSw versions:

- RFC 1434
- RFC 1795
- DLSw Version 2.0 (unicast)
- RFC 2166 (multicast)

You select a version using the DLSw RFC Version parameter from the DLSw Basic Global Parameters window. For instructions on using this parameter, see Appendix A, “Site Manager Parameters.”

If you are using Site Manager to configure backup peers, you select Yes at the Backup Config parameter in the DLSw Multicast Configuration window or the DLSw Peer Configuration window. If you are using the BCC, set the backup-peer parameter to yes. Now, you can edit the rest of the backup peer parameters.

You use the Backup Peer Type parameter to specify a TCP connection for the backup peer. The valid values are:

- RFC 1795 -- Send the request for connection over TCP only.
- V2.0 (Unicast - TCP) -- Send the request for connection over TCP only.
- V2.0 (Unicast - Unknown) -- Send the request for connection over UDP; the backup peer can fall back to RFC 1795 mode.
- V2.0 (Unicast - UDP) -- Send the request for connection over UDP; one TCP connection is expected; the backup peer cannot fall back to RFC 1795 mode.
- RFC 2166 (Multicast) -- Send the request for connection to the multicast address configured in the Backup IP Address field.

The Backup Peer Type cannot exceed the global DLS RFC type on the router. For example, if the DLSw global RFC type for the router is RFC 2166 (multicast), the backup peer can be any of the available values. If the RFC type is V2.0 unicast, the backup peer cannot be multicast. If the RFC type is RFC 1795, the backup peer cannot be multicast, V2.0 UDP, V2.0 Unknown, or V2.0 TCP.

For instructions on configuring a backup peer for RFC 2166 (multicast) and the other DLSw versions, see Chapter 4, “Customizing DLSw Services.”

Chapter 3
Starting DLSw Services

This chapter describes how to create basic DLSw configurations by specifying parameter values where required and accepting default values for all other parameters.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Starting Configuration Tools	3-2
DLSw Configuration Hierarchy	3-2
Starting DLSw Globally	3-4
Starting DLSw over Ethernet	3-4
Starting DLSw over Token Ring	3-6
Starting DLSw over FDDI	3-8
Starting DLSw over SDLC	3-11
Starting DLSw over Frame Relay	3-15
Starting DLSw over QLLC	3-25
Starting DLSw over ATM LANE	3-26
Deleting DLSw from an Interface	3-30
Deleting DLSw from a Router	3-30

Starting Configuration Tools

Before configuring DLSw services, refer to the following user guides for instructions on how to start and use the Nortel Networks configuration tool of your choice. These guides also describe generically how to create or modify a device configuration.

Configuration Tool	User Guide
Bay Command Console (BCC)	*Using the Bay Command Console (BCC)*
Site Manager	*Configuring and Managing Routers with Site Manager*

DLSw Configuration Hierarchy

Figure 3-1 shows the hierarchy of DLSw objects and the relationship between objects on which you can configure DLSw using the BCC.

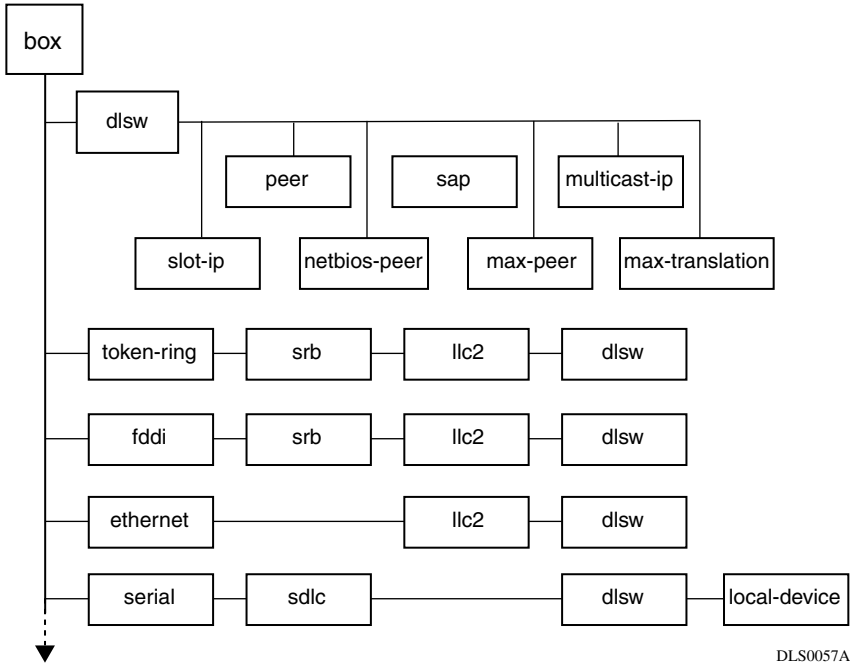

Figure 3-1. DLSw Configuration Hierarchy *(continued next page)*

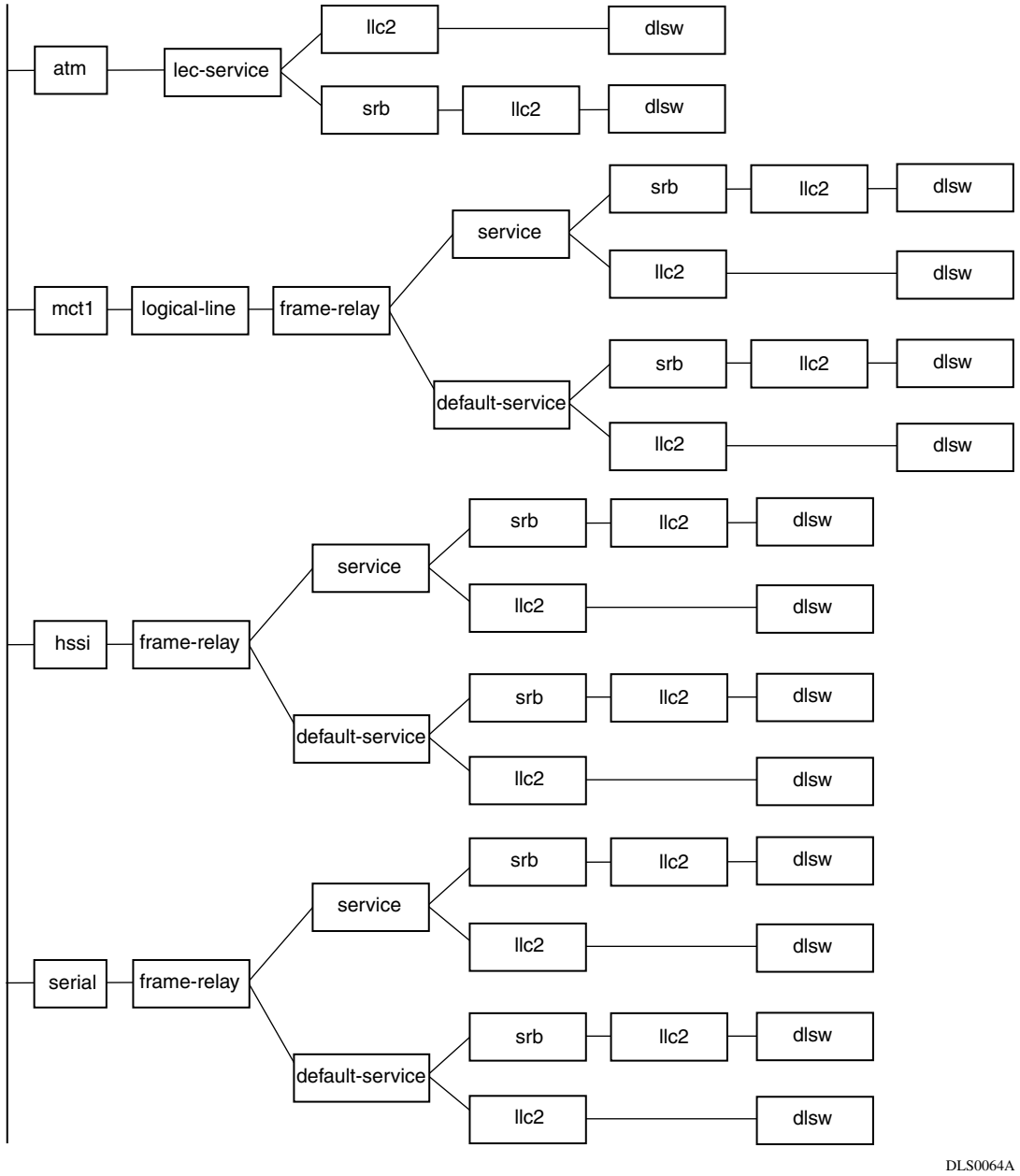

Figure 3-1. DLSw Configuration Hierarchy *(continued)*

Starting DLSw Globally

To configure DLSw on the router with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure DLSw.**

   ```
   box# dlsw
   ```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 4 with an IP address of 1.1.1.4, enter:**

   ```
   dlsw# slot-ip 4 ip-addr 1.1.1.4
   slot-ip/4#
   ```

3. **Return to the dlsw prompt.**

   ```
   slot-ip/4# dlsw
   ```

4. **Display DLSw default settings.**

   ```
   dlsw# info
   ```

Starting DLSw over Ethernet

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw on an Ethernet interface, you first configure DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure LLC2 and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw on an Ethernet interface with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure DLSw global attributes.**

   ```
   box# dlsw
   dlsw#
   ```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.3, enter:**

   ```
   dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
   slot-ip/3#
   ```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
slot-ip/3# box
box#
```

4. **Specify an Ethernet interface on which you want to configure LLC2 and DLSw.**

```
box# ethernet 3/2
```

5. **Configure LLC2 on the Ethernet interface.**

```
ethernet/3/2# llc2
```

6. **Configure DLSw on the Ethernet interface.**

```
llc2/ethernet3/2# dlsw
```

7. **Display DLSw default settings.**

```
dlsw/ethernet/3/2# info
```

Using Site Manager

To enable DLSw over Ethernet, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the Ethernet connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
4. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (for dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
6. Set **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over Token Ring

The following sections describe how to start DLSw over token ring using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw on a token ring interface, you first configure SRB and DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure LLC2, SRB, and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw on an token ring interface with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure DLSw global attributes.**

```
box# dlsw
dlsw#
```

2. **Specify the slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.3, enter:**

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
slot-ip/3#
```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
slot-ip/3# box
box#
```

4. **Configure SRB global attributes.**

```
box# srb internal-lan-id 0x10 bridge-id 0x20
srb#
```

5. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
srb# box
```

6. **Specify the token ring interface on which you want to configure SRB, LLC2, and DLSw.**

   ```
   box# token-ring 2/1
   ```

7. **Configure SRB on the token ring interface.**

   ```
   token-ring/2/1# srb interface-ring-id 0x30
   srb/token-ring/2/1#
   ```

8. **Configure LLC2 on the token ring interface.**

   ```
   srb/token-ring/2/1# llc2
   llc2/token-ring/2/1#
   ```

9. **Configure DLSw on the token ring interface.**

   ```
   llc2/token-ring/2/1# dlsw
   dlsw/token-ring/2/1#
   ```

10. **Display DLSw default settings.**

    ```
    dlsw/token-ring/2/1# info
    ```

Using Site Manager

To enable DLSw over token ring, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the token ring connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
4. Set the following parameters: • **SR Internal LAN ID** • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (for dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4. **Note:** For a description of **SR Internal LAN ID**, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.
6. Set **SR Interface Ring ID** and **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-8. **Note:** For a description of **SR Interface Ring ID**, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over FDDI

The following sections describe how to configure DLSw over FDDI using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw on an FDDI interface, you first configure SRB and DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure LLC2, SRB, and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw on an FDDI interface with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. Configure DLSw global attributes.

```
box# dlsw
dlsw#
```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.3, enter:**

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
slot-ip/3#
```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
slot-ip/3# box
box#
```

4. **Configure SRB global attributes.**

```
box# srb internal-lan-id 0x10 bridge-id 0x20
srb#
```

5. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
srb# box
```

6. **Specify an FDDI interface on which you want to configure SRB, LLC2, and DLSw.**

```
box# fddi 3/1
fddi/3/1#
```

7. **Configure SRB on the FDDI interface.**

```
fddi/3/1# srb interface-ring-id 0x30
srb/fddi/3/1#
```

8. **Configure LLC2 on the FDDI interface.**

```
srb/fddi/3/1# llc2
llc2/fddi/3/1#
```

9. **Configure DLSw on the FDDI interface.**

```
llc2/fddi/3/1# dlsw
dlsw/fddi/3/1#
```

10. **Display DLSw default settings.**

```
dlsw/fddi/3/1# info
```

Using Site Manager

To enable DLSw over FDDI, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the FDDI connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
4. Set the following parameters: • **SR Internal LAN ID** • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (for dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4. **Note:** For a description of **SR Internal LAN ID**, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.
6. Set **SR Interface Ring ID** and **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-8. **Note:** For a description of **SR Interface Ring ID**, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over SDLC

The following sections describe how to configure DLSw over SDLC using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw over SDLC, you first configure SDLC and DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure SDLC, DLSw, and local devices on a serial interface.

For example, to configure SDLC and DLSw on a serial interface with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure SDLC global attributes.**

   ```
   box# sdlc
   sdlc#
   ```

2. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

   ```
   sdlc# box
   box#
   ```

3. **Configure DLSw global attributes.**

   ```
   box# dlsw
   dlsw#
   ```

4. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 5 with an IP address of 1.1.1.5, enter:**

   ```
   dlsw# slot-ip 5 ip-addr 1.1.1.5
   slot-ip/5#
   ```

5. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

   ```
   slot-ip/5# box
   box#
   ```

6. **Specify a serial interface on which you want to configure SDLC, DLSw, and local devices.**

   ```
   box# serial 5/2
   serial/5/2#
   ```

7. **Configure SDLC on the serial interface.**

   ```
   serial/5/2# sdlc
   sdlc/serial/5/2#
   ```

8. **Configure DLSw on the serial interface.**

```
sdlc/serial/5/2# dlsw
dlsw/serial/5/2#
```

9. **Configure a local device on the serial interface.**

```
dlsw/serial/5/2# local-device c1 source-mac 400031740001
destination-mac 400037450001 pu-name example1 pu-type 2.0
xid-format fixed idblock 017 idnum a008e
local-device/2#
```

Using Site Manager

DLSw uses the SDLC line parameters to determine the characteristics of the link. You must set these parameters to allow the router to communicate with the SNA equipment. The major parameters are:

- Clock Source
- Internal Clock Speed
- Sync Line Coding

DLSw uses local device entries to define SDLC-attached SNA physical units to the router. NetBIOS does not support SDLC-attached devices.

To take advantage of integrated SDLC services in DLSw, you must define the SDLC devices that you want to appear as natively attached to the LAN. When you define such devices, you map the devices to LAN MAC and SAP addresses.

You can add local devices at the following times:

- When you add SDLC to a synchronous circuit and add the DLSw protocol to that circuit
- When you edit a synchronous circuit that already has SDLC and DLSw on it
- When you edit DLSw interface parameters. In this case, the interface whose parameters you edit must already have at least one local device defined on it.

Several local device parameters must match other entries in the router, or in the attached SDLC device, including:

- Link Station Address (hex)
- PU Type
- IDBLOCK

- IDNUM
- XID Format
- Source (Virtual) MAC (hex)
- Destination MAC (hex)
- Source (Virtual) SAP (hex)
- Destination SAP (hex)

For information about these parameters, see Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters."

For each local device that you add, Site Manager creates a corresponding SDLC link station, which is how SDLC sees the local device. Site Manager assigns several default parameter values to the link station. For information about how to access and change the link station parameters, see *Configuring SDLC Services*.

Once you add local devices, you can access and change the local device parameters, as described in Chapter 4, "Customizing DLSw Services."

To enable DLSw over SDLC, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the synchronous connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The WAN Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **SDLC**.	
4. Click on **OK**.	The SDLC Line Parameters window opens.
5. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
6. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
8. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
9. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.
10. Set **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8.	
11. Click on **OK**.	The DLS Local Device Configuration window opens.
12. Click on **Add**.	The Local Device Configuration window opens.
13. Set the following parameters: • **Link Station Address (hex)** • **PU Name** • **Source (Virtual) MAC (hex**) • **Source (Virtual) SAP (hex**) • **Destination MAC (hex)** • **Destination SAP (hex)** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-30.	
14. Click on **OK**.	The DLS Local Device Configuration window opens.
15. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over Frame Relay

When configuring DLSw over frame relay, IBM provides two types of frame relay support:

- Boundary Access Node (BAN) -- RFC 1490 Bridged 802.5 format
- Boundary Network Node (BNN) -- RFC 1490 or Routed SNA

When configuring a frame relay interface for DLSw using Site Manager, a message prompts you to select either BAN or BNN.

Starting DLSw over Frame Relay BAN

BAN frames use a standard RFC 1490 Bridged 802.5 over frame relay format. Since this is a source-routed frame, you must enable SRB on a frame relay BAN interface.

The following sections describe how to configure DLSw over frame relay BAN using the BCC or Site Manager.

Note: If you configure two token ring interfaces or a token ring interface and a frame relay BAN interface on a DLSw single switch, the traffic between the two interfaces uses SRB, not DLSw.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw on a frame relay BAN interface, you first configure SRB and DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure frame relay, SRB, LLC2, and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw on a frame relay BAN interface over a serial line with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure DLSw global attributes.**

```
box# dlsw
dlsw#
```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.3, enter:**

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
slot-ip/3#
```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
slot-ip/3# box
box#
```

4. **Configure SRB global attributes.**

```
box# srb internal-lan-id 0x10 bridge-id 0x15
srb#
```

5. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
srb# box
```

6. **Specify a serial interface on which you want to configure frame relay, SRB, LLC2, and DLSw.**

```
box# serial 3/1
serial/3/1#
```

7. **Configure frame relay on the serial interface.**

```
serial/3/1# frame-relay
frame-relay/3/1#
```

8. **Configure a service name for the frame relay interface.**

```
frame-relay/3/1# service service1
service/service1#
```

9. **Configure SRB on the serial interface.**

```
service/service1# srb interface-ring-id 0x30
srb/service1#
```

10. **Configure LLC2 on the serial interface.**

```
srb/service1# llc2
llc2/service1#
```

11. **Configure DLSw on the serial interface.**

```
llc2/service1# dlsw
dlsw/service1#
```

12. **Display DLSw default settings.**

```
dlsw/service1# info
```

Using Site Manager

When you select BAN, SRB is automatically enabled and you must configure it. Specifically:

- If SRB has not been previously configured on the router, the SRB Global Parameters window appears.
- The SRB Interface Parameters window appears.

For more information about configuring SRB, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.

To enable DLSw over frame relay BAN, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the synchronous connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The WAN Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **Frame Relay**.	
4. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
5. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Frame Relay/SNA Connection window opens.
7. Click on **BAN PVC**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
8. Set the following parameters: • **SR Internal LAN ID** • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4. **Note:** For a description of **SR Internal LAN ID**, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.	
9. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
Set **SR Interface Ring ID** and **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8. **Note:** For a description of **SR Interface Ring ID**, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.	
10. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over Frame Relay BNN

Because the BNN format does not carry the destination MAC address, incoming LAN frames are delivered to the host in two ways:

- Using permanent virtual circuits (PVCs)
- Using switched virtual circuits (SVCs)

Using PVCs

If you use PVCs to connect two devices over the network, the router retrieves the destination MAC address from a frame relay mapping table. The table has these fields:

- DLCI -- Represents a frame relay PVC
- Remote MAC -- Represents the destination MAC address
- Local MAC -- Represents a source MAC address

There is one frame relay mapping table for each physical frame relay interface. Each entry must have a value specified for the Local MAC, Remote MAC, or both. Incoming LLC2 packets (such as LAN packets) are checked against the entries in this table. If a match occurs, the router forwards the frame only to the DLCI specified. If no entry is found, then the information is not forwarded out this interface as a BNN packet.

For more information about the frame relay mapping table, see *Configuring LLC Services*.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw on a frame relay BNN interface using PVCs, you first configure DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure frame relay, LLC2, and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw on a frame relay BNN interface over a serial line with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure DLSw global attributes.**

```
box# dlsw
dlsw#
```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.3, enter:**

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
slot-ip/3#
```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
slot-ip/3# box
box#
```

4. **Specify a serial interface on which you want to configure frame relay, LLC2, and DLSw.**

```
box# serial 3/1
serial/3/1#
```

5. **Configure frame relay on the serial interface.**

```
serial/3/1# frame-relay
frame-relay/3/1#
```

6. **Configure a service name for the frame relay interface.**

```
frame-relay/3/1# service service1
service/service1#
```

7. **Configure a PVC on the service record.**

```
service/service1# pvc 100
pvc/4/100#
```

8. **Configure LLC2 on the serial interface.**

```
service/service1# llc2
llc2/service1#
```

9. **Configure the number of the virtual circuit to which you are mapping the local or remote MAC address. For example:**

```
llc2/service1# dlci 101
dlci/101#
```

10. **Configure the remote and local MAC addresses. For example:**

```
dlci/101# local-mac 111111111111 remote-mac 222222222222
dlci/101#
```

11. **Return to the llc2 prompt.**

```
dlci/101# back
llc2/service1#
```

12. **Configure DLSw on the serial interface.**

```
llc2/service1# dlsw
dlsw/service1#
```

13. **Display DLSw default settings.**

```
dlsw/service1# info
```

Using Site Manager

To enable DLSw over a frame relay BNN using PVCs, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the synchronous connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The WAN Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **Frame Relay**.	
4. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
5. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Frame Relay/SNA Connection window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
7. Click on **BNN PVC**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
8. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (dual-switch networks only) 9. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
10. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.
11. Set **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8.	
12. Click on **OK**.	The LLC2 Frame Relay PVC Mappings window opens.
13. Click on **Add**.	The LLC2 Frame Relay PVC Mapping Add window opens.
14. Set the following parameters: • **DLCI** • **Remote MAC** • **Local MAC** Refer to *Configuring LLC Services* for parameter descriptions.	
15. Click on **OK**.	The LLC2 Frame Relay PVC Mappings window opens.
16. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Using SVCs

If you use SVCs to connect two devices over the network, it is not necessary to preconfigure virtual circuits. An SVC exists only when there is data to transfer. For SVCs, the frame relay switch assigns the DLCI number on a per call basis.

The Destination MAC address is mapped to a data network address X.121 or E.164 number (address, subaddress, numbering plan, and type of number). You configure numbering plan numbers (for example, X.121 or E.164). Each record contains one mapping and the type of mapping (either local or remote).

Remote Mapping

Use remote mapping to map a remote MAC address to a remote data network address (DNA) for outgoing calls. Local mapping maps the called DNA in the incoming setup message to the local MAC address.

If you configure only the remote mappings, then the router can only initiate SVC setup because the router cannot accept incoming calls. The router accepts incoming calls from any MAC address to the destination MAC address configured in the mapping and establishes the SVC.

Local Mapping

The router accepts the local DNA from the Frame Relay Service Record SVC configured in the mapping and establishes the SVC. The local DNA from the Frame Relay Service Record SVC configuration serves as the source DNA. If you configure only the local mappings, then the router cannot initiate the calls; it can only accept incoming calls. If you configure local and remote mappings, then the router can initiate and accept the call for the connection.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw and LLC2 on a frame relay BNN interface using SVCs, you first configure DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure frame relay, LLC2, and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw and LLC2 on a frame relay BNN SVC interface over a serial line with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. **Configure DLSw global attributes.**

   ```
   box# dlsw
   dlsw#
   ```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.3, enter:**

   ```
   dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
   slot-ip/3#
   ```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

   ```
   slot-ip/3# box
   box#
   ```

4. **Specify a serial interface on which you want to configure frame relay, LLC2, and DLSw.**

```
box# serial 3/1
serial/3/1#
```

5. **Configure frame relay on the serial interface.**

```
serial/3/1# frame-relay
frame-relay/3/1#
```

6. **Configure a service name for the frame relay interface.**

```
frame-relay/3/1# service service1
service/service1#
```

7. **Configure an SVC on the service record.**

```
service/4/1# svc-options svc-name svc1
svc-options/svc1#
```

8. **Configure LLC2 on the serial interface.**

```
service/service1# llc2
llc2/service1#
```

9. **Configure the MAC address you want the SVC to use.**

```
llc2/service1# fr-svc 111111111111
fr-svc/111111111111#
```

10. **Return to the llc2 prompt.**

```
fr-svc/111111111111# back
llc2/service1#
```

11. **Configure DLSw on the serial interface.**

```
llc2/service1# dlsw
dlsw/service1
```

12. **Display DLSw default settings.**

```
dlsw/service1# info
```

Using Site Manager

To enable DLSw over frame relay BNN using SVCs, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the synchronous connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The WAN Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **Frame Relay**.	
4. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
5. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Frame Relay/SNA Connection window opens.
7. Click on **BNN SVC**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
8. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
9. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.
10. Set **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8.	
11. Click on **OK**.	The LLC2 Frame Relay SVC Mappings window opens.
12. Click on **Add**.	The LLC2 Frame Relay SVC Mapping Add window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
13. Set the following parameters: • **MAC Address** • **Mapping Type** • **X121 Addr** • **SubAddr** • **Numbering Plan** • **Type of Number** Refer to *Configuring LLC Services* for parameter descriptions.	
14. Click on **OK**.	The LLC2 Frame Relay SVC Mappings window opens.
15. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over QLLC

To configure an X.25 network interface circuit for QLLC:

1. **Add an entry to the QLLC mapping table. (Refer to *Configuring X.25 Services* for instructions.)**
2. **Configure the QLLC mapping parameters. (Refer to *Configuring X.25 Services* for instructions.)**
3. **Configure DLSw over X.25 circuits.**

To enable DLSw over QLLC, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the X.25 circuit on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Edit Connector window opens.
2. Click on **Edit Circuit**.	The Circuit Definition window opens.
3. Choose **X.25**.	The X.25 menu opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
4. Choose **Services**.	The X.25 Service Configuration window opens.
5. Choose **Protocols**.	
6. Choose **Add/Delete**.	
7. Choose **DLSw**.	
8. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
9. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version**. • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
10. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.
11. Set **DLSw Slot IP Address**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8.	
12. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Starting DLSw over ATM LANE

The following sections describe how to configure DLSw over ATM LANE using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw on an ATM LANE interface, you first configure DLSw global attributes. Then, you configure LLC2 and DLSw on that interface.

For example, to configure DLSw on an ATM LANE interface with default settings, navigate in configuration mode to the top-level box prompt:

1. Configure DLSw global attributes.

```
box# dlsw
dlsw#
```

2. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and the IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot. For example, to configure slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.13, enter:**

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.3
slot-ip/3#
```

3. **Return to the box-level prompt.**

```
slot-ip/3# box
box#
```

4. **Specify the ATM interface on which you want to configure DLSw and LLC2.**

```
box# atm 3/1
atm/3/1#
```

5. **Enable signaling on the ATM interface.**

```
atm/3/1# signaling
signaling/3/1#
```

6. **Return to the ATM interface prompt.**

```
signaling/3/1# back
atm/3/1#
```

7. **Create a LAN emulation client (LEC) service record for that interface. For example, to create a service record with the name service1, enter:**

```
atm/3/1# lec-service service1
lec-service/service1#
```

8. **Configure LLC2 on the ATM interface.**

```
lec-service/service1# llc2
llc2/service1#
```

9. **Configure DLSw on the ATM interface.**

```
llc2/service1# dlsw
dlsw/service1#
```

To enable DLSw over ATM LANE, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, select the ATM connector on which you are enabling DLSw services.	The Add Circuit window opens.
2. Click on **OK**.	The Select Connection Type window opens.
3. Click on **ATM**.	The Initial ATM Signaling Config window opens.
4. Click on **OK**.	The Edit ATM Connector window opens.
5. Click on **Service Attributes**.	The ATM Service Records List window opens.
6. Click on **Add**.	The ATM Service Record Parameters window opens.
7. Edit the parameters you want. See Appendix A in *Configuring ATM and MPLS Services* for parameter descriptions.	
8. Click on **OK**.	The Select Protocols window opens.
9. Choose **DLSw**. When you choose DLSw, you automatically choose LLC2.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window opens.
10. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (for dual-switch networks only) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
11. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw Basic Interface window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
12. Do one of the following: • If you selected Unspecified or IEEE8023 for the emulated LAN type, set the **DLSw Slot IP Address** parameter. • If you selected IEEE8025 for the emulated LAN type, set the **DLSw Slot IP Address** and **ATM Bridging Mode** parameters. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-8.	
13. Click on **OK**.	The ATM Service Record Parameter window opens.
14. Click on **Done**.	The ATM Service Records List window opens.
15. Click on **Done**.	The Edit ATM Connector window opens.
16. Click on **Done**.	The Select Connection Type window opens.
17. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Deleting DLSw from an Interface

To delete DLSw from an interface, navigate to the dlsw prompt and enter:

delete

For example, to remove DLSw from a token ring interface:

1. **Navigate to the interface from which you want to remove DLSw.**

```
box# token-ring 3/1
token-ring/3/1# srb
srb/token-ring/3/1# llc2
llc2/token-ring/3/1# dlsw
dlsw/token-ring/3/1#
```

2. **Enter the delete command.**

```
dlsw/token-ring/3/1# delete
```

Deleting DLSw from a Router

Using the BCC

To delete DLSw services from the router, navigate to the dlsw prompt and enter:

delete

For example, the following command removes DLSw from the router:

```
dlsw# delete
box#
```

Using Site Manager

To delete DLSw from a router entirely:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Delete DLS**.	A confirmation window opens.
4. Click on **Yes**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Chapter 4
Customizing DLSw Services

When you start DLSw on the router, default values are in effect for all parameters. Depending on the requirements of your network, you may want to change some of those values. This chapter includes the following information:

Topic	Page
Adding Single-Switch DLSw Services	4-2
Adding Dual-Switch DLSw Services	4-8
Configuring DLSw Local Devices for SDLC	4-25
Configuring Predefined MACs and Names	4-33
Configuring DLSw Packaging	4-41
Configuring the DLSw/APPN Boundary Function	4-43
Configuring DLSw for IP Multicasting	4-47
Configuring DLSw Backup Peers	4-52
Enabling RSVP for DLSw	4-57
Specifying SRB or TB for DLSw over ATM Token Ring LANE	4-59
Configuring MAC Address Translation	4-59
Configuring BAN-2 Termination	4-63
Configuring DLSw Prioritization	4-64

For a description of all Site Manager parameters for DLSw, see Appendix A, “Site Manager Parameters.”

You can configure DLSw over LLC and SRB. For instructions on configuring LLC, see *Configuring LLC Services*. For instructions on configuring SRB, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.

Adding Single-Switch DLSw Services

When configuring a DLSw single-switch network, DLSw is enabled on each relevant interface. Using single-switch mode allows communication between:

- Devices attached to different local interfaces on the same router. For example, an SDLC-attached 3274 control unit can communicate with a local LAN-attached SNA server (Figure 4-1).
- A local device and an SNA device directly attached to a frame relay network. An SNA device connected to router B (Figure 4-1) can communicate with the AS/400 using either BNN or BAN protocols.
- SNA and NetBIOS devices attached to different routers, each running DLSw. For example, a NetBIOS client attached to router A can communicate with the NetBIOS server connected to router B (Figure 4-1). The connection can cross multiple routers running DLSw. Since DLSw is running on the WAN interface, the router operates as single-switch DLSw.

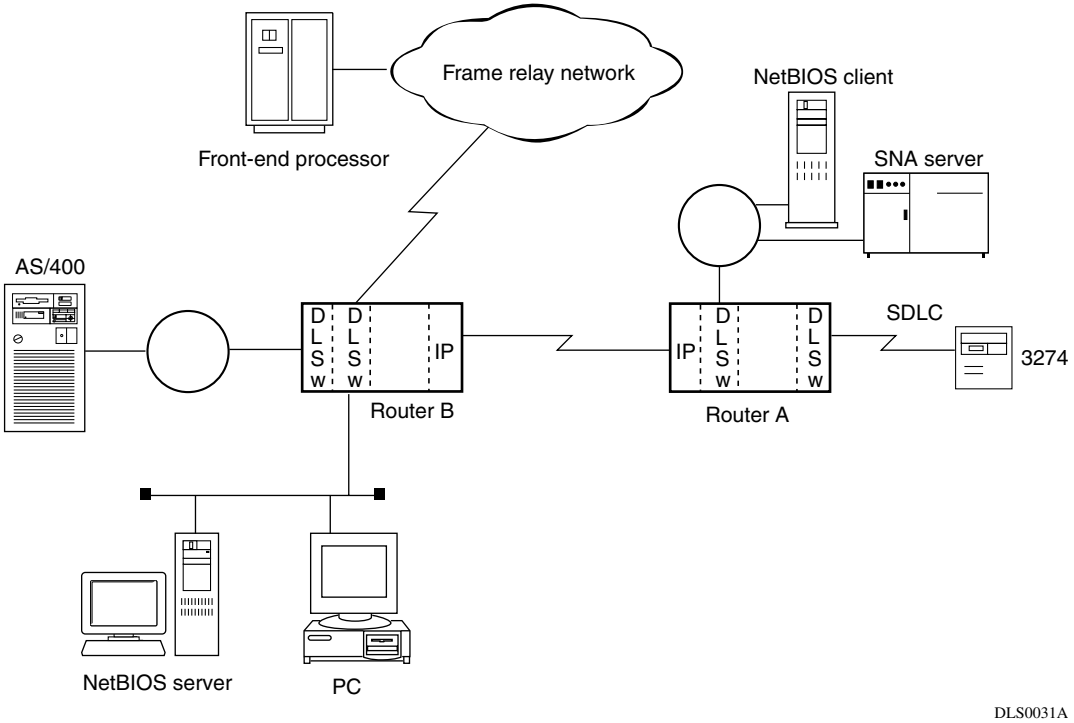

Figure 4-1. DLSw Single-Switch Network Example

To configure single-switch DLSw services on the router, you define:

- DLSw basic global parameters
- DLSw advanced global parameters (optional--Site Manager only)
- DLSw SAP table entries (optional)

Using the BCC

To configure single-switch DLSw services, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

virtual-ring <*ring_id*> **rfc-type** <*rfc_type*> **virtual-ring-mtu** <*mtu*> **max-slot-sessions** <*max_slot*>

ring_id is the standard ring number that SRB uses to identify traffic that DLSw places on the SRB LAN. The values are 0x001 to 0xFFF.

rfc_type is the RFC implementation to run on the router. The values are rfc1434, rfc1795, v20unicast, or rfc2166. The default is rfc1434.

mtu is the MTU size for frames sent from local, LAN-attached systems to systems on remote LANs. The value is any number of bytes equal to or greater than 1. The default is 1500.

max_slot is the maximum number of LLC2 sessions that a given slot in the router can support for DLSw requirements. The default is 200.

For example, the following commands specify a virtual ring ID of 0x001, rfc type 1434, virtual ring mtu of 100, and maximum number of slot sessions of 1000:

```
dlsw# virtual-ring 0x001 rfc-type rfc1434 virtual-ring-mtu 100
max-slot-sessions 1000
```

Using Site Manager

To configure single-switch DLSw services, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Basic Global**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameter window opens.
4. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw NetBIOS Support** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.
6. Choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
7. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
8. Choose **Advanced**.	The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window opens.
9. Set the following parameters: • **Max Slot Sessions** • **Virtual Ring MTU** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-15.	
10. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

DLSw SAP Table

Every data packet contains a 1-byte destination SAP and source SAP. You can select whether DLSw affects packets based on SAPs that are defined to DLSw. Each router maintains an independent list of DLSw SAP addresses in a global DLSw SAP table.

Each DLSw SAP table entry has a unique hexadecimal value. The default SAP table includes SAPs 00, 04, 08, and 0C (hexadecimal), which is sufficient for most SNA applications. To support NetBIOS, edit the DLSw NetBIOS Support parameter and specify Yes to add SAP F0 to the table.

Figure 4-2 shows a sample network with three routers running DLSw. This network uses the following values in the SAP tables:

- Router A, the central site router, supports both SNA and NetBIOS traffic. SNA session traffic uses SAP 04, and NetBIOS traffic uses F0. Additionally, SNA requires SAP 00 for session initiation. These hexadecimal values (00, 04, F0) must exist in the SAP table.
- Router B, the remote site, supports NetBIOS traffic only. SAP F0 is the only required entry in the SAP table. By default, the SAPs 0x04, 0x08, and 0x0C appear in the table.
- Router C, a regional site, supports SNA traffic only. In this example, SNA requires SAPs 00 and 04 in the SAP table.

Note that SNA traffic can use other SAPs. Most SNA traffic uses SAP 04.

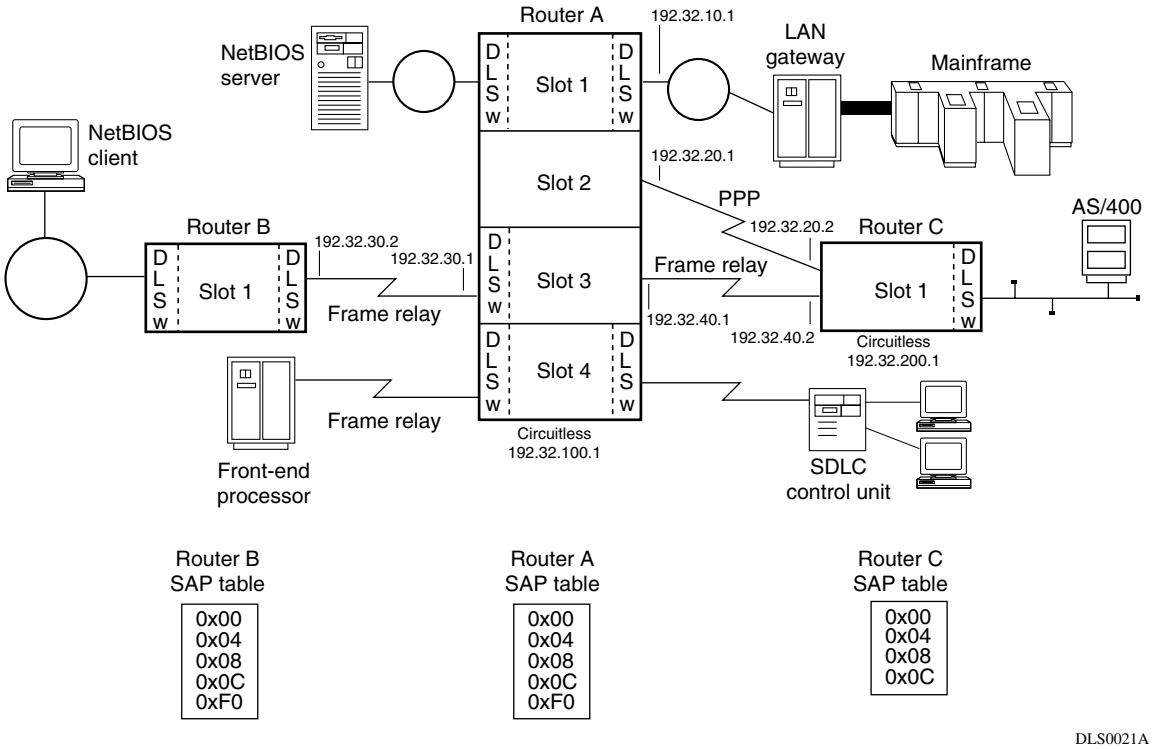

Figure 4-2. Sample Network with SAP Table Definitions

Adding a DLSw SAP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to add a DLSw SAP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To add a new SAP table entry, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

sap <*sap_addr*>

sap_addr is the destination SAP address associated with a communication subsystem on a remote device (for example, on a PC or host). The values are even SAP addresses (00 to F0) in hexadecimal format.

For example, the following command adds a SAP address of 0x04 to the SAP table:

```
dlsw# sap 0x04
```

Using Site Manager

To add a new SAP table entry, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **SAP Table**.	The DLSw SAP Configuration window opens.
4. Click on **Add**.	The DLSw SAP Parameter window opens.
5. Set the **SAP** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-61.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw SAP Configuration window opens.
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing a DLSw SAP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to edit a DLSw SAP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To edit the SAP window size, navigate to the sap prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw; sap/4**) and enter:

credit *<window_size>*

window_size is the maximum number of unacknowledged LLC2 frames that the local end station DLSw switch accepts for forwarding to the remote end station. The values are 6 to 200. The default is 10.

For example, the following command changes the sap window size to 100:

```
sap/4# credit 100
```

Using Site Manager

You can edit only the SAP Window (flow control) parameter associated with an existing DLSw SAP table entry.

Note: After you add an entry to the DLSw SAP table, Site Manager disallows any attempt to edit the SAP address associated with that entry. To change the address of an existing DLSw SAP, you must delete the entry in the DLSw SAP Configuration window, and then add a new SAP with the new address. For information about how to add a new DLSw SAP, see "Adding a DLSw SAP Table Entry."

To edit the SAP Window parameter associated with a particular DLSw SAP, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **SAP Table**.	The DLSw SAP Configuration window opens.
4. Click on the SAP address you want to edit.	
5. Edit the **SAP Window** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-62.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Adding Dual-Switch DLSw Services

When configuring DLSw dual-switch services, DLSw is enabled only on interfaces supporting LAN-, SDLC-, QLLC-, frame relay- (BAN/BNN), ATM-, or APPN Boundary-attached devices. The links between routers are configured for IP routing. DLSw is *not* configured on these links.

Figure 4-3 illustrates a DLSw dual-switch network. In this network:

- Dual-switch services are used between routers. Any SNA device attached to router A can communicate with the AS/400 or FEP connected to router B.
- Single-switch conversion can be used between DLSw interfaces on router A, as well as between the DLSw interfaces on router B. This allows the AS/400 to communicate with the FEP.
- The connection between routers A and B can be any medium that supports IP.

Intermediate routers that are located between routers A and B must transport IP packets using IP routing. DLSw is not required by the intermediate node.

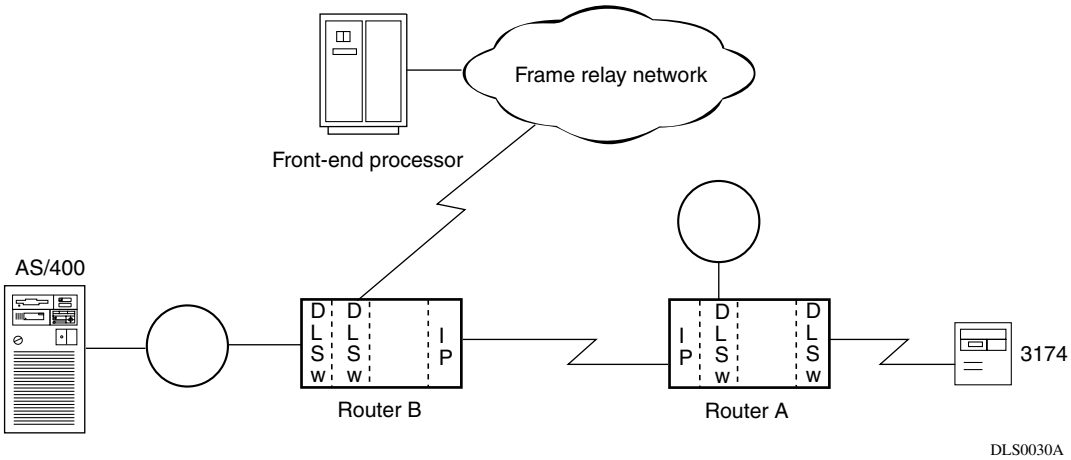

Figure 4-3. DLSw Dual-Switch Network Example

To configure dual-switch DLSw services on the router, you define:

- DLSw global and interface parameters
- DLSw advanced global and advanced interface parameters (Site Manager only)
- DLSw slot table entries
- DLSw peer IP table entries

Using the BCC

To configure dual-switch DLSw services, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and complete the following steps:

1. **Specify a slot for the IP interface and an IP address to use for TCP connections based on this slot.**

   ```
   dlsw# slot-ip <slot> ip-addr <ip_addr>
   slot-ip/4#
   ```

   slot is the slot number for the IP interface address you reserved for that slot.

   ip_addr is an IP address for a DLSw peer slot in the router. TCP uses this IP address for connections associated with that slot.

2. **Return to the dlsw prompt:**

   `slot-ip/4#` **dlsw**

3. **Enter the following commands:**

   `dlsw#` **virtual-ring** *<ring_id>* **rfc-type** *<rfc_type>* **virtual-ring-mtu** *<mtu>* **max-slot-sessions** *<max_slot>* **tcp-window-size** *<tcp_win_size>* **wan-keepalive-time** *<keepalive_time>* **unconfigured-peers** *<unconfig_peers>* **mac-age-time** *<mac_age_time>* **tcp-inactivity time** *<tcp_inact_time>*

   ring_id is the standard ring number that SRB uses to identify traffic that DLSw places on the SRB LAN. The values are 0x001 to 0xFFF.

   rfc_type is the RFC implementation to run on the router. The values are rfc1434, rfc1795, v20unicast, or rfc2166. The default is rfc1434.

   mtu is the MTU size for frames sent from local, LAN-attached systems to systems on remote LANS. The value is any number of bytes equal to or greater than 1. The default is 1500.

   max_slot is the maximum number of LLC2 sessions that a slot in the router can support for DLSw requirements. The values are 1 to 10000. The default is 200.

   tcp_win_size is the maximum amount of DLSw data that the local and remote TCP entities can send before requiring an acknowledgment, or can receive before acknowledging. The values are 5000 to 64000. The default is 8000.

   keepalive_time specifies how often the router sends a signal to the peer router to check that the peer router is working correctly and can receive messages. The values are 0 to 2147483647 seconds. The default is 60 seconds.

   unconfig_peers specifies whether DLSw peers in this router should accept or reject TCP sessions with other DLSw peers not defined in the DLSw peer table. The values are reject and accept. The default is accept.

   mac_age_time is the maximum number of seconds that inactive MAC addresses can exist in the MAC-to-DLSw mapping cache. The values are 0 to 2,147,483,647 seconds. The default is 300. Enter 0 to disable MAC caching.

   tcp_inact_time is the period of inactivity to elapse before terminating a TCP connection. The values are 0 to 2147483647 seconds. The default is 300.

For example, the following commands specify a virtual ring ID of 0x001, rfc type 1434, virtual ring mtu of 100, maximum number of slot sessions of 1000, tcp window size of 10000, keepalive time of 300 seconds, reject unconfigured peers, mac cache age of 600, and a tcp inactivity time of 600 seconds.

```
dlsw# virtual-ring 0x001 rfc-type rfc1434 virtual-ring-mtu 100
max-slot-sessions 1000 tcp-window-size  10000 wan-keepalive-time 300
unconfigured-peers reject mac-age-time 600 tcp-inactivity time 600
```

Using Site Manager

To configure dual-switch DLSw services, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Basic Global**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameter window opens.
4. Set the following parameters: • **DLSw RFC Version** • **DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)** • **DLSw NetBIOS Support** • **DLSw Peer IP Address** (optional) Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-4.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.
6. Choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
7. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
8. Choose **Basic Interface**.	The DLSw Basic Interface Parameters window opens.
9. Set the **DLSw Slot IP Address** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-8.	
10. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.
11. Choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
12. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
13. Choose **Advanced**.	The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window opens.
14. Set the following parameters: • **TCP Window Size** • **KeepAlive Time (sec)** • **Reject Unconfigured Peers** • **MAC Cache Age** • **TCP Inact Time (sec)** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-13.	
15. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

DLSw Slot Table

Each slot on a Nortel Networks router running DLSw acts as an independent data link switch. You identify each slot by assigning a *unique* IP address for the slot. This mapping is done in the DLSw slot table. Each entry in the table consists of a DLSw slot number plus the address of the IP interface that you allocate for that slot.

The router uses this IP address to establish the TCP sessions between peers in a DLSw network. Generally, the IP address that you select is either the circuitless IP address or the IP address of any interface on this slot. However, it is acceptable to use the IP address of any interface on any slot.

Before you can add any entries to the slot table, you must add or allocate one IP interface for each DLSw-capable slot in the router configuration. You do not have to configure the associated IP and DLSw interfaces on the same slot.

For configurations that do not have as many physical IP interfaces as DLSw slots, add IP addresses to one or more IP-capable interfaces. If required, a single interface can support multiple IP addresses, for example, in large SDLC configurations, because IP cannot be configured on SDLC interfaces. For more information on configuring multiple IP addresses, see *Configuring IP, ARP, RARP, RIP, and OSPF Services*.

Note: You can use the circuitless IP interface address for one (and only one) DLSw-capable slot. Using the circuitless IP interface allows TCP connections for DLSw services on that slot to be less dependent on the availability of specific physical circuits or data links. Nortel Networks recommends that you set the Keepalive Time parameter to a nonzero value when using the circuitless IP address. For more information about the circuitless IP interface, see *Configuring IP, ARP, RARP, RIP, and OSPF Services*.

Note: If you configure RFC 2166, you must specify the IP interface address that is multicast capable for the DLSw slot table.

Figure 4-4 shows a sample network with three routers running DLSw. Although many options exist for the slot table, this network uses the following values:

- Router A, the central site router, has three slots running DLSw, as follows:
  - -- Slot 1, represented by the circuitless IP address. This provides the highest availability for token ring devices.
  - -- Slot 3, represented by the IP address of the directly attached frame relay interface.
  - -- Slot 4, represented by an IP address of a token ring interface on slot 1. It is acceptable to use any other IP address existing on this router to represent this slot.
- Router B, a remote site connected to the central site using frame relay, is a single-slot router running single-switch DLSw. The IP address of the frame relay interface represents this slot in the slot table.
- Router C, a regional site connected to the central site using multiple links, is a single-slot router running dual-switch DLSw. The circuitless IP address represents this slot in the slot table.

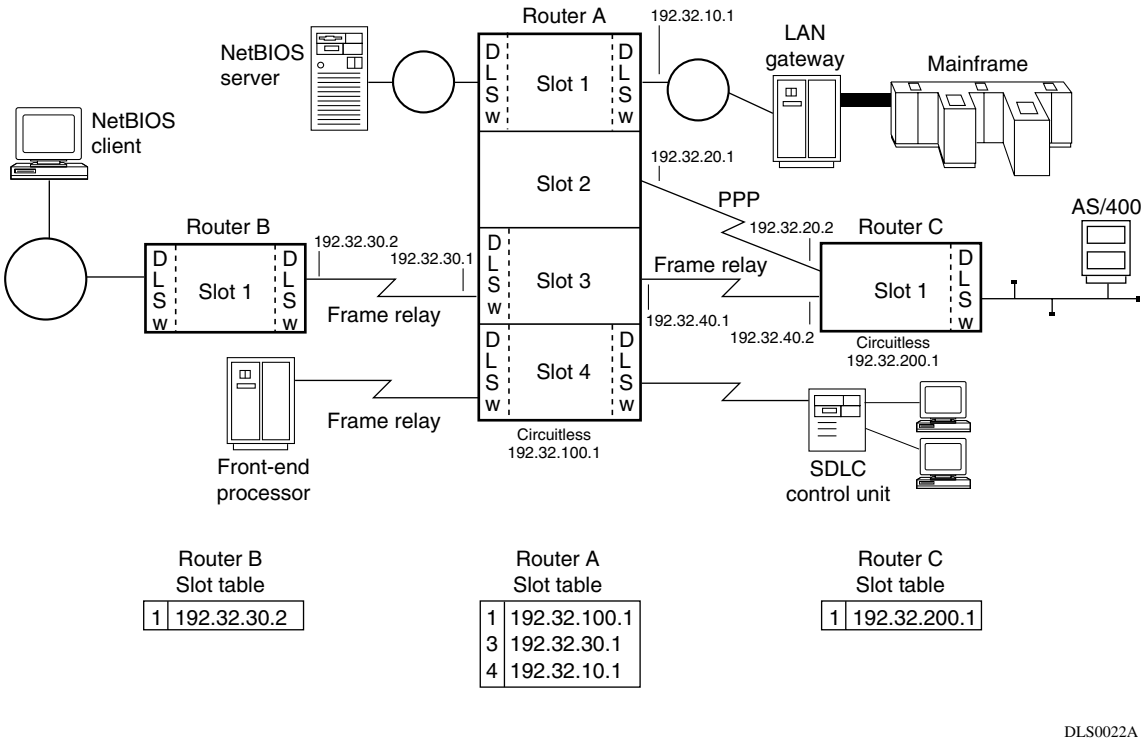

Figure 4-4. Sample Network with Slot Table Definitions

Adding a DLSw Slot IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to add a DLSw slot IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To add a new DLSw slot IP table entry, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

slot-ip *<slot>* **ip-addr** *<ip_addr>*

slot is the slot number for the IP interface address that you reserved for that slot.

ip_addr is an IP address for a DLSw peer slot in the router. TCP uses this IP address for connections associated with that slot.

For example, to specify slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.4, enter:

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.4
```

Using Site Manager

To add a new DLSw slot IP table entry, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Slot IP Table**.	The DLSw Slot Configuration window opens.
4. Click on **Add**.	A second DLSw Slot Configuration window opens.
5. Set the following parameters: • **Slot** • **IP Address** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-58.	

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
6. Click on **OK**.	The first DLSw Slot Configuration window opens.
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing a DLSw Slot IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to edit a DLSw slot IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To change the IP address for a slot, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

slot-ip *<slot>* **ip-addr** *<ip_addr>*

slot is the slot number that you want to associate with the IP interface address that you reserved for that slot.

ip_addr is an IP address associated with a specific DLSw peer slot in the router. TCP uses this IP address for connections associated with that slot.

For example, to specify slot 3 with an IP address of 1.1.1.7, enter:

```
dlsw# slot-ip 3 ip-addr 1.1.1.7
```

Using Site Manager

You can edit only the IP Address for TCP Connection parameter in an existing DLSw slot IP table entry.

To edit the IP address associated with a particular slot, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Slot IP Table**.	The DLSw Slot Configuration window opens.
4. Click on the slot you want to edit.	
5. Edit the **IP Address for TCP Connection** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-60.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

DLSw Peer IP Table

TCP/IP sessions exchange information between devices attached to each router. Data link switches that connect to the same TCP/IP network are called *DLSw peers*. Each DLSw peer is represented by an IP address.

On Nortel Networks routers, each slot that you configure with DLSw services functions as an independent DLSw peer. Other vendors may offer RFC 1434/1795-compliant products that support either single or multiple DLSw peers internally. For example, each IBM 6611 processor in your network serves as a single DLSw peer that you must define on the router.

In each router, you can define a list of peers identifying remote routers with which a DLSw session can be initiated. These are called configured peers, and are defined in the DLSw peer IP table.

Configured Peers

A *configured peer* is a remote data link switch, represented by an IP address, that is predefined in the local router. You define a configured peer by specifying its unique IP address in the Site Manager DLSw peer IP table.

IP addresses in the local router's peer IP table must also appear in the slot table of a remote router.

A configured peer can receive broadcast frames directly from DLSw peers in a local router.

The local router issues broadcast frames triggered by client demand for connection services. Responses to these broadcasts enable the local router to:

- Identify DLSw peers that can reach the requested remote NetBIOS or SNA system
- Manage (open, restart, and close) TCP connections to the DLSw peer that can reach the requested SNA or NetBIOS system

Once a router knows that a DLSw peer can reach a specific system, the router can address frames directly to that peer and avoid unnecessary broadcast traffic on the TCP/IP network.

You typically define as configured peers:

- One slot in each DLSw-capable remote Nortel Networks router in your TCP/IP network to which broadcast traffic must be forwarded
- Any other peer in your TCP/IP network that complies with RFC 1434, RFC 1795, or DLSw Version 2.0

You define each configured peer by specifying its unique IP address on the TCP/IP network.

With RFCs 1434 and 1795, once you initialize DLSw services, the local router establishes two TCP connections (one for transmitting, one for receiving) between each local DLSw-capable slot and every configured peer in the TCP/IP network. Remote DLSw peers on the network follow the same procedure. DLSw uses TCP ports 2065 and 2067.

Peer Types

For DLSw Version 2.0, you can define a specific transport type to a DLSw peer, specifically:

- TCP
- UDP
- Unknown

Peers that you define as TCP or UDP will cause the local router to use TCP or UDP explorer frames respectively and exclusively to establish connections with the peer router. A peer that you define as Unknown causes the local router to use UDP explorer frames to locate the destination MAC address of the peer before establishing the TCP connection. If the TCP connection cannot be made, or if there is no UDP response, DLSw performs fallback attempts to earlier RFC protocols to establish the connection. If all connection attempts fail regardless of the RFC used, a connection can be made to a configured DLSw backup peer, described in the next section.

For information about configuring peer types and fallback attempts, see the Transport Type and SNA Fallback Attempts parameters in Appendix A, "Site Manager Parameters." If you are using the BCC, set the backup-type and transport-type parameters.

Backup Peers

A backup peer receives all DLSw-related broadcast frames for a given router or network processor if the primary peer router is unavailable or cannot be reached over a TCP connection. When you specify the backup IP address, DLSw places the entry in the backup peer IP table. The backup peer IP table parameters allow you to manage a router that you want to use when the local router cannot connect to a primary DLSw peer.

Simplifying the Peer IP Table

Nortel Networks provides the following mechanisms for reducing the number of required entries in the DLSw peer IP table:

- Broadcast peers
- Unconfigured peers

Broadcast Peers

It is not necessary to enter more than one peer per remote router into the peer IP table. The entry representing the remote router is the *broadcast peer* for that router. Only broadcast peers normally receive broadcast frames from another router. However, all DLSw peers on a remote Nortel Networks router can both receive and respond to broadcast frames that the broadcast peer in that router forwards internally.

Unconfigured Peers

A Nortel Networks router running DLSw can respond to requests from remote routers to initiate DLSw sessions, even if the local router's peer IP table does not contain the remote peer definition. When DLSw establishes a session to a remote slot, DLSw dynamically adds the slot to the list of known peers. Any remote DLSw peer that the router learns dynamically is an *unconfigured peer.* A router's peer IP table does not list the unconfigured peers.

DLSw supports unconfigured peers only if you set the Site Manager parameter DLSw Reject Unconfigured Peers or the BCC parameter unconfigured-peers to Accept.

When a local DLSw peer (Nortel Networks or otherwise) receives a broadcast response from a nonbroadcast peer on a Nortel Networks router, the local peer opens a DLSw connection to the unconfigured peer.

Figure 4-5 shows a sample network of three routers running DLSw. This network uses the following peer IP table entries:

- Router A's peer IP table has a single entry, as follows:
  - -- The DLSw single-switch communication with router B does not require an entry in the peer IP table.
  - -- The connection to router C uses dual-switch DLSw. You must create an entry in the peer IP table so that router A can forward DLSw broadcasts to router C. Router A's peer IP table contains the circuitless IP address of router C (192.32.200.1), since this value is the only value in router C's slot table.
- Router B communicates to router A using a single-switch connection. You do not need a peer IP table for router B.
- Router C communicates with router A using dual-switch mode. Router C's peer IP table contains the circuitless IP address of router A (192.32.100.1). However, you can use any IP address in router A's slot table instead of the circuitless IP address.

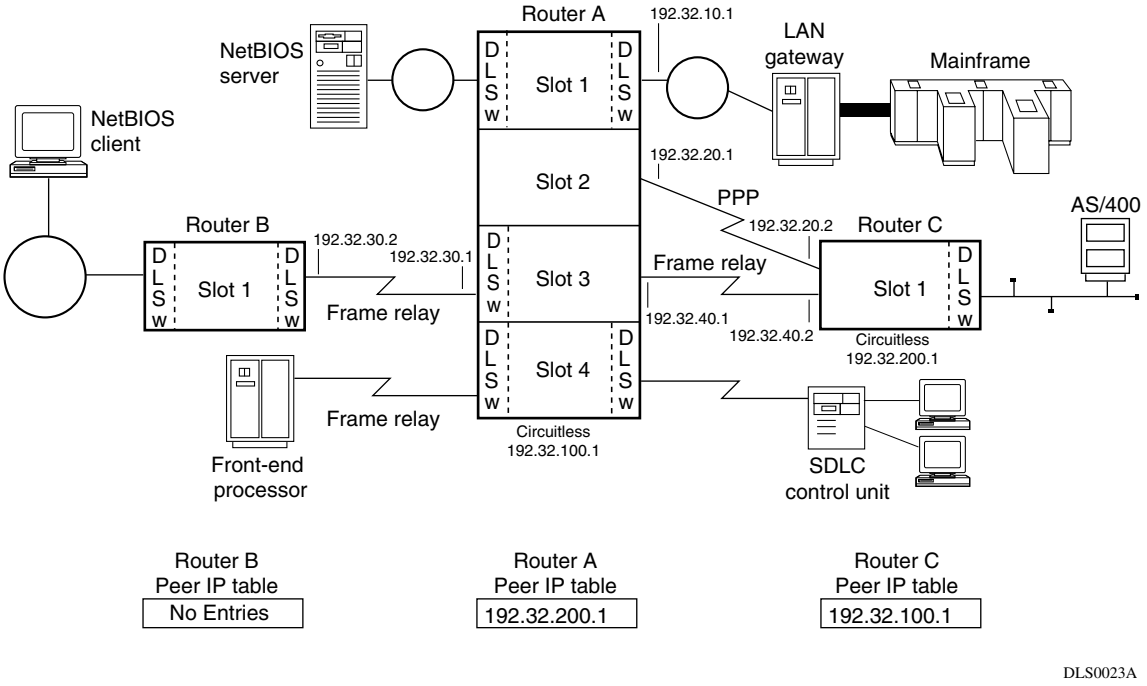

Figure 4-5. Sample Network with Peer IP Table Definitions

When using dual-switch mode, you do not configure DLSw on the links between the routers. You must configure IP on these interfaces. When communicating using single-switch mode, you must configure DLSw on the connecting interfaces.

Either link from router A to router C can transport DLSw traffic. Standard IP routing determines the link over which these routers communicate.

Multicast IP Entries (RFC 2166)

When you configure a multicast IP entry, you do not need to configure DLSw peer entries because configuring a multicast IP entry allows for TCP connections to be established.

Adding a DLSw Peer IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to add a DLSw peer IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To add a new DLSw peer IP table entry, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

peer *<peer_ip_addr>*

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of a remote DLSw peer. Adding this address to the DLSw IP peer table defines a configured peer to the local router. The ranges are 0.0.0.0 to 223.255.255.255 and 240.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255.

For example, to add a peer with the IP address 5.5.5.5, enter:

```
dlsw# peer 5.5.5.5
peer/5.5.5.5#
```

Using Site Manager

To add a new DLSw peer IP table entry, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Peer IP Table**.	The DLSw Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on **Add**.	A second DLSw Peer Configuration window opens.
5. Set the **Peer IP Address** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-44.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The first DLSw Peer Configuration window opens.
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing a DLSw Peer IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to edit a DLSw peer IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To edit configured peers, navigate to the peer prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**; **peer/5.5.5.5**) and change one or more of the following parameters:

backup-end-time <*bu_end_time*>

bu_end_time is the end time when a configured backup peer is available. The values are 1 to 2400. The default is 1.

backup-hold-down <*bu_hold_time*>

bu_hold_time is the time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer. The values are 0 to 21474836478. The default is 120.

backup-ip-addr <*bu_ip_addr*>

bu_ip_addr is the IP address of a backup DLSw peer.

backup-max-uptime <*bu_max_uptime*>

bu_max_uptime is the maximum time (in seconds) that the backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer. The values are 0 to 999999. The default is 0.

backup-peer <*bu_peer*>

bu_peer indicates whether to configure a backup peer for the primary peer. The values are yes and no. The default is no. A backup peer can only be configured for an RFC 1434 or RFC 1795 peer.

backup-start-time <*bu_start_time*>

bu_start_time is the start time when a configured backup peer is available. While the backup peer is available, the local router can establish a TCP connection with it if the primary peer is unreachable. The values are 0 to 2400 in *hhmm* format. The default is 1.

backup-type <*bu_type*>

bu_type is the DLSw backup peer type. Values are multicast, v20udp v20unknonw, v20tcp, and tcp1795. The default is v20unknown.

peer-interoperability <*peer_interoperability*>

peer_interoperability allows interoperability with other vendors' routers. The values are enabled and disabled. The default is enabled.

peer-ip-addr <*peer_ip_addr*>

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of the DLSw peer.

transport-type <*transport_type*>

transport_type is the transport capability of the remote peer: tcp, udp, or unknown. The local router attempts to use this configured transport option when establishing a TCP connection with the remote peer. This parameter is only valid when rfc-type is set to V2.0. The values are tcp, udp, or unknown. The default is unknown.

For example, to change peer-interoperability from enabled to disabled:

1. **Check the current value of the peer-interoperability parameter.**

```
peer/5.5.5.5# peer-interoperability
   peer-interoperability enabled
```

2. **Change the value to disabled.**

```
peer/5.5.5.5# peer-interoperability disabled
   peer/5.5.5.5#
```

Using Site Manager

To edit configured peers, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Peer IP Table**.	The DLSw Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on the remote peer you want to edit.	
5. Edit the parameters you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-46.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring DLSw Local Devices for SDLC

The DLSw Local Devices parameters let you map SDLC devices to LAN MAC and SAP addresses.

Using the BCC

To configure a local device, navigate to the dlsw interface prompt (for example, **box**; **serial 5/2**; **sdlc**; **dlsw**) and enter:

local-device <*link_station _address*> **source-mac** <*source_mac*> **destination-mac** <*dest_mac*> **pu-name** <*name*>

Note: To configure local devices, you must have SDLC configured on this interface. Configuring a local device creates a corresponding link station.

link_station _address is the address of the link station. This value must match the polling address defined in the SDLC-attached device. The value can be any hexadecimal link station address from 0x01 to 0xFE.

source_mac is the source MAC address of an emulated token ring end station for this device. The option is any standard 12-digit hexadecimal most significant bit (MSB) token ring MAC address.

dest_mac is the token ring or Ethernet host that the local device will reach using SDLC services. The option is any 12-digit hexadecimal address MSB token ring MAC address.

name is the name of the adjacent link station. The values are any 8-byte ASCII name.

For example, to configure a local device with a link station address of 0x01, a source MAC address of 123456789012, a destination MAC address of 222222222222, and the name service1, enter:

```
dlsw/serial/5/2# local-device 0x01 source-mac 123456789012
destination-mac 222222222222 pu-name service1
local-device/2#
```

Using Site Manager

To configure a local device, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose the connector on which you want to configure an SDLC device.	The Edit Connector window opens.
2. Click on **Edit Circuit**.	The Circuit Definition window opens.
3. From the Circuit Definition menu bar, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
4. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
5. Choose **Local Devices**.	The DLSw Local Device Configuration window opens.
6. Click on **Add**.	The Local Device Configuration window opens.
7. Edit the following parameters: • **DLSw Mode** • **Link Station Address (hex)** • **PU Name** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-30.	
8. Edit the following parameters for the PU type you want to configure: • For PU 1.0, set **PU Type** to T1.0 and set **XID Format** to Variable 1. • For PU 2.0, set **PU Type** to T2.0, set **IDBLOCK** and **IDNUM**, and set **XID Format** to Fixed. * • For PU 2.1, set **PU Type** to T2.1 and set **XID Format** to Variable 2. • For PU 4, set **PU Type** to T4. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-31.	

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
9. Edit the following parameters for the device: • **Source (Virtual) MAC (hex)** • **Source (Virtual) SAP (hex)** • **Destination MAC (hex)** • **Destination SAP (hex)** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-35.	
10. Click on **OK**.	The DLS Local Device Configuration window opens.
11. Click on **Apply** to save your changes.	
12. Choose one of the following tasks: • Choose **Link Details** to display the SDLC Link Station Configuration window. Refer to *Configuring SDLC Services* for information about the parameters in this window. • Edit a local device. Go to the next section, “Editing a Local Device.” • Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

* IDBLOCK and IDNUM are not required when a) host attachment and client attachment are both SDLC and b) when host attachment is a “Local Major Node,” such as 3174 DSPU or ESM 5745 DSPU.

Editing a Local Device

The following sections describe how to edit a local device using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To edit a local device, navigate to the local device prompt (for example, **box**; **serial 5/2**; **sdlc**; **dlsw**; **local-device**) and change one or more of the following parameters:

activation-sequence <*activation_sequence*>

activation_sequence is the order in which you want SDLC PU2.0 fixed format primary devices activated. The values are localdevicefirst and peerfirst. The default is localdevicefirst.

canureach-retries <*canureach_retries*>

canureach_retries specifies the number of times a CANUREACH message is initially sent to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session. The values are 0 to 4294967295. The default is 4294967295.

canureach-retries-2 <*canureach_retries_2*>

canureach_retries_2 is the number of times a CANUREACH message is sent to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session. This parameter becomes active when the standard canureach-retries expires. The values are 0 to 4294967295. The default is 4294967295.

canureach-timer <*canureach_timer*>

canureach_timer specifies the time interval (in seconds) after which the router sends a CANUREACH message to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session. The values are 0 to 3600. The default is 30.

canureach-timer-2 <*canureach_timer_2*>

canureach_timer_2 specifies the time interval (in seconds) after which the router sends a CANUREACH message to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session. This parameter becomes active when the canureach-timer setting expires. The values are 0 to 3600. The default is 30.

destination-mac <*dest_mac*>

dest_mac is the token ring or Ethernet host that the local device will reach using SDLC services. The value is any standard 12-digit hexadecimal MSB token ring MAC address.

destination-sap <*dest_sap*>

dest_sap is the token ring or Ethernet host that the local device will reach using SDLC services. The values are 0x01 to 0xFE. The default is 0x4.

idblock <*idblock*>

idblock is the block number, which must match the host's IDBLOCK value that identifies incoming connection requests. This parameter is used with the pu-type, idnum, and xid-format parameters to determine the station exchange identification (XID) value. The block number is any 3-digit hexadecimal value.

idnum <*idnum*>

idnum is the ID number, which must match the host's IDNUM value that identifies incoming connection requests. This parameter is used with the pu-type, idblock, and xid-format parameters to determine the station XID value. The ID number is any 5-digit hexadecimal value from 00000 to FFFFF.

link-station-address <*link_station_addr*>

link_station_addr is the address of the link station. This value must match the polling address defined in the SDLC-attached device. The value is any hexadecimal link station address from 0x01 to 0xFE.

link-station-retries <*link_station_retries*>

link_station_retries is the maximum number of times that a connect request is sent to the local SDLC device to establish a session. The values are 0 to 4294967295. The default is 4294967295.

link-station-timer <*link_station_timer*>

link_station_timer sets the time interval (in seconds) after which the router sends a connect request to the local SDLC device to establish a session. The values are 0 to 3600. The default is 30 seconds.

mode <*mode*>

mode is the type of link station you are configuring on this node. The values are primary, secondarypp (point-to-point), secondarymp (multipoint), and negotiable. The default is primary.

pu-name <*pu_name*>

pu_name is the name of the adjacent link station. The value is any 8-byte ASCII name.

pu-type <*pu_type*>

pu_type is the type of XID-sending node. The values are T1.0, T2.0, T2.1, and T4.

rx-credit <*rx_credit*>

rx_credit is the maximum number of frames that SDLC can send to DLSw. This parameter is for flow control. The values are 0 to 200. The default is 10.

source-mac <*source_mac*>

source_mac is the source MAC address of an emulated token ring end station for this device. The value is any standard 12-digit hexadecimal MSB token ring MAC address.

source-sap <*source_sap*>

source_sap is the SAP of an emulated token ring or Ethernet end station for this device. The values are 0x01 to 0xFE. The default is 0x04.

state <*state*>

state indicates whether the DLSw local device is enabled or disabled. The values are disable or enable. The default is enable.

tx-credit <*tx_credit*>

tx_credit is the maximum number of frames that DLSw can send to the SDLC. The values are 0 to 200. The default is 10.

xid-format <*xid_format*>

xid_format is the format of the XID I-field. The values are variable1, fixed, or variable2. The default is fixed.

xid-pass-thru <*xid_pass_thru*>

xid_pass_thru specifies whether XID is to be passed to the SDLC when the host is connected to a token ring LAN or other media supporting switched major nodes, and the remote device is SDLC. The values are enable and disable. The default is disable. This parameter is used for PU 2.1 circuits.

Using Site Manager

To edit a local device, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Local Devices**.	The DLSw Local Device Configuration window opens.
4. Click on the local device whose parameters you want to change.	
5. Edit the parameters you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-30.	
6. Click on **Apply** to save your changes.	
7. Click on **Done**.	

Configuring Predefined MACs and Names

Nortel Networks routers in your network learn about the locations of remote NetBIOS and SNA systems that are accessible through DLSw services in two ways:

- Through a dynamic process, where DLSw inspects incoming frames to learn the location of remote end stations. This is a DLSw default mechanism.
- Through static definitions where the network administrator defines the location of NetBIOS and SNA systems attached to remote LANs. Static definitions are never required, but may be used to reduce the amount of broadcast messages traversing the network.

Dynamically Learned Remote Systems

Nortel Networks routers cache (dynamically learn) the MAC address and NetBIOS name of remote systems.

Local Nortel Networks routers receive frames that contain information about the DLSw peer IP address of each remote system that uses DLSw services. This information is learned from broadcast frames (TESTs, XIDs, and NetBIOS) generated by the remote end stations or applications. The router stores this information in separate NetBIOS and MAC caches.

The router uses the learned IP address to locally specify the DLSw peer that can reach the desired end station. The cache is not used for forwarding traffic during the first LLC2 session, but will be used in new sessions with that end station.

You can set a timer value that determines when NetBIOS or MAC cache entries are removed from the router. The timer parameters are NetBIOS Cache Age and MAC Cache Age. When the cached entry goes unused for the specified cache age time, or becomes unreachable to new queries, it is removed from the cache and subsequent frames are broadcast to all configured peers.

The router refreshes a cache entry when DLSw services establish a connection to the NetBIOS or SNA system associated with that entry. The router resets the appropriate Cache Age timer to its maximum wait interval.

Setting the NetBIOS and MAC Cache Age Timers

The following sections describe how to set the NetBIOS and MAC Cache Age Timers using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To set the NetBIOS Cache Age or MAC Cache Age timers, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

`dlsw#` **netbios-age-time** *<netbios_age_time>* **mac-age-time** *<mac_age_time>*

netbios_age_time is the maximum number of seconds that inactive NetBIOS names can exist in the NetBIOS-to-DLSw peer mapping cache. The value is any number of seconds greater than 20. The default is 300.

mac_age_time is the maximum number of seconds that inactive MAC addresses can exist in the MAC-to-DLSw mapping cache. The values are 0 to 2147483647 seconds. The default is 300. Enter 0 to disable MAC caching.

Using Site Manager

To set the NetBIOS Cache Age or MAC Cache Age timers, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Advanced**.	The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window opens.
4. Set the following parameters: • **MAC Cache Age** • **NetBIOS Cache Age** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-17.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Statically Defined Remote Systems

To reduce DLSw broadcasts, you can statically define the IP addresses of DLSw peers that can reach remote systems or applications associated with specific NetBIOS names or MAC addresses. These addresses augment any information that the router's MAC and NetBIOS caching mechanisms learn dynamically.

Static entries can exist in two tables:

- Default NetBIOS peer IP table -- Contains the list of all remote NetBIOS systems and applications that you can access by DLSw connection services on the local router. Each entry contains the NetBIOS name and the IP address of the DLSw peer to which this NetBIOS device is connected.
- Default MAC peer IP table -- Contains the list of all remote SNA systems and applications that you can access by DLSw connection services on the local router. Each entry contains a MAC address and the IP address of a DLSw peer that can forward packets to this MAC address.

In the local router's default NetBIOS peer IP table, enter the IP address of the remote peer associated with any remote NetBIOS application that you need to reach through DLSw services. Each entry in this table associates the name of a NetBIOS client or server with the IP address of the remote DLSw peer that can reach that client or server.

In the router's default MAC peer IP table, enter the peer IP address of the DLSw peer associated with any remote SNA system or application that you need to reach through DLSw services. Each entry in this table associates the MAC address for an SNA system with the IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach that system.

Unlike dynamically learned entries, statically defined entries remain until you delete them from the default NetBIOS peer IP table or the default MAC peer IP table.

Adding a DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to add a DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To add a new DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

netbios-peer *<netbios_name>* **peer-ip-addr** *<peer_ip_addr>*

netbios_name is the name of the remote NetBIOS client/server or application that you want to reach using DLSw services.

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach the remote NetBIOS client/server or application named in the same DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry. The value is any 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* (using dotted-decimal notation).

For example, to specify a NetBIOS peer with the name service1 and an IP address of 3.3.3.3, enter:

```
dlsw# netbios-peer service1 peer-ip-addr 3.3.3.3
netbios-peer/service1#
```

Using Site Manager

To add a new DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Default NetBIOS**.	The DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on **Add**.	The DLSw NetBIOS Configuration window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
5. Set the following parameters: • **NetBIOS Name** • **NetBIOS Peer IP Address** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-63.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration window opens.
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing a DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to edit a DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To change the IP address for a NetBIOS peer, navigate to the netbios-peer prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**; **netbios-peer** *<name>*) and enter:

peer-ip-addr *<peer_ip_addr>*

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach the remote NetBIOS client/server or application named in the same DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry. The value is any 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* (using dotted-decimal notation).

For example, to change the IP address to 1.2.3.4, enter:

```
netbios-peer/service1# peer-ip-addr 1.2.3.4
netbios-peer/service1#
```

Using Site Manager

You can edit only the Default NetBIOS Peer IP Address parameter in a default NetBIOS peer IP table entry. To edit the parameter, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Default NetBIOS**.	The DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on the default NetBIOS peer that you want to edit.	
5. Edit the **Default NetBIOS Peer IP Address** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-65.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Adding a DLSw Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to add a DLSw default MAC peer IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To add a new DLSw default MAC peer IP table entry, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

mac-peer *<mac_addr>* **peer-ip-addr** *<peer_ip_addr>*

mac_addr is the MAC address associated with the remote SNA system or application that you want to reach using DLSw services. The value is any 48-bit MAC address expressed in hexadecimal notation.

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of a remote DLSw peer that can reach the remote SNA system or application identified by the MAC address in the same default MAC peer IP table entry. The value is any 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* (using dotted-decimal notation).

For example, to specify a MAC peer with the address 123456789012 and an IP address of 1.2.3.4, enter:

```
dlsw# mac-peer 123456789012 peer-ip-addr 1.2.3.4
mac-peer/123456789012#
```

Using Site Manager

To add a new DLSw default MAC peer IP table entry, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Default MAC**.	The DLSw MAC Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on **Add**.	The DLSw MAC Configuration window opens.
5. Set the following parameters: • **MAC Address** • **MAC Peer IP Address** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-66.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw MAC Peer Configuration window opens.
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing a DLSw Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry

The following sections describe how to edit a DLSw default MAC peer IP table entry using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To change the IP address for a default MAC peer, navigate to the mac-peer prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**; **mac-peer** *<mac_addr>*) and enter:

peer-ip-addr *<peer_ip_addr>*

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of a remote DLSw peer that can reach the remote SNA system or application identified by the MAC address in the same default MAC peer IP table entry. The value is any 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* (using dotted-decimal notation).

For example, to change the IP address to 2.2.2.2, enter:

```
mac-peer/123456789012# peer-ip-addr 2.2.2.2
mac-peer/123456789012#
```

Using Site Manager

You can edit only the Default MAC Peer IP Address parameter in a default MAC peer IP table entry. To edit the parameter, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Default MAC**.	The DLSw MAC Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on the default MAC peer that you want to edit.	
5. Edit the **Default MAC Peer IP Address** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-68.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring DLSw Packaging

Packaging allows multiple DLSw frames (consisting of user data and DLSw's SSP header) to be placed into a single TCP/IP frame. Packaging enhances router performance and is important for networks with many LAN/WAN segments.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw packaging, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

package-max-size *<package_max_size>* **package-threshold** *<package_threshold>* **package-timeout** *<package_timeout>*

package_max_size is the maximum amount of information (in bytes) that can reside in one package when sending multiple DLSw frames in a single TCP frame for transmission over a WAN. The values are 0 to 2147483647. The default is 1532.

package_threshold is the percentage of the DLSw TCP window that must be in use if DLSw is to delay sending a package (one that is currently being built). The values are 0 to 100. The default is 20 percent.

package_timeout is the time interval (in milliseconds) to delay a package before sending it to TCP. The values are 0 to 2147483647. The default is 10.

For example, to configure a DLSw package with a maximum size of 1000 bytes, a threshold of 50 percent, and a timeout of 100, enter:

```
dlsw# package-max-size 1000 package-threshold 50 package-timeout 100
dlsw#
```

Using Site Manager

To configure DLSw packaging, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Advanced**.	The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window opens.
4. Set the following parameters: • **Maximum Package Size** • **Packaging Timeout (msec)** • **Packaging Threshold** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-18.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring the DLSw/APPN Boundary Function

Instructions for configuring the DLSw/APPN boundary function are covered under the following topics:

Topic	Page
Step 1: Configuring DLSw and APPN	4-43
Step 2: Creating a Virtual Circuit and Adding a DLSw Interface	4-44
Step 3: Obtaining the Virtual Circuit Number	4-45
Step 4: Adding an APPN Interface to an Existing Virtual Circuit	4-46
Disabling and Reenabling the Boundary Function	4-46

Step 1: Configuring DLSw and APPN

Before you can configure the DLSw boundary function, DLSw and APPN must be running on the same slot on the router. Using Site Manager:

1. **Configure DLSw on a slot.**

   For instructions, see Chapter 3, “Starting DLSw Services.”

2. **Configure APPN on the same slot as DLSw.**

   Set the Max Send BTU Size and Max Receive BTU Size APPN advanced port parameters. Set these parameters according to the size supported by the end device. If you enable high-performance routing (HPR) support, set these parameters to 768 or greater.

   If you use dependent logical unit requestor (DLUR), you must supply information for the following APPN advanced global parameters:

   - Default dependent logical unit server (DLUS) Name
   - Default Backup DLUS Name

   Also, the DLSw/APPN boundary function requires a setting of Enable for the Implicit DLUR parameter. When you configure the DLSw/APPN boundary function, Site Manager automatically sets the Implicit DLUR parameter to Enable. Make sure that this parameter is properly set.

   For information on configuring APPN, see *Configuring APPN Services*.

Step 2: Creating a Virtual Circuit and Adding a DLSw Interface

To create a virtual circuit and add a DLSw interface to the circuit, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Boundary Function**.	The Boundary Function window opens.
4. Click on **Add VCCT**.	A message appears: `Do you want to create a new Virtual Circuit or use an existing one?`
5. Click on **Yes** to create a new virtual circuit and add a DLSw interface to the virtual circuit.	The VCCT Slot Configuration window opens.
6. Specify a slot for the virtual circuit you are creating. Click on **Help** or see the **Slot Number** parameter description on page A-69. The slot you choose for the virtual circuit must be the same slot on which DLSw and APPN are running.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Step 3: Obtaining the Virtual Circuit Number

Site Manager assigns a circuit number to each virtual circuit you create. When you add an APPN interface to the virtual circuit you are using to support the boundary function, you must specify the circuit number assigned to the VCCT. To obtain this information, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **Global Protocols**.	The Global Protocols window opens.
3. Choose **VCCT**.	The VCCT menu opens.
4. Click on **Interfaces**.	The VCCT circuits window opens, listing all the virtual circuits on the router. Each entry specifies the slot and circuit number of the virtual circuit.
5. Make a note of the circuit number of the VCCT you have created.	
6. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Step 4: Adding an APPN Interface to an Existing Virtual Circuit

To add an APPN interface to an existing virtual circuit, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose APPN.	The APPN menu opens.
3. Choose **Boundary Function**.	The Boundary Function window opens.
4. Click on **Add VCCT**.	A message appears: `Do you want to create a new Virtual Circuit or use an existing one?`
5. Click on **Cancel** to use an existing virtual circuit.	The VCCT CCT Configuration window opens.
6. Enter the slot and circuit number of the virtual circuit to which you want to add an APPN interface.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The APPN Configuration window opens.
8. Enter a MAC address and a SAP for the interface, as described in *Configuring APPN Services*.	
9. Click on **Done**.	A message appears: `Would you like to configure Adjacent Link Stations on this port?`
10. Click on **Cancel**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Disabling and Reenabling the Boundary Function

By default, the DLSw/APPN boundary is enabled on the router. You can use the following Site Manager procedure to disable and reenable it.

Site Manager Path	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Boundary Function**.	The Boundary Function menu opens.
4. Choose **Global**.	The Edit VCCT Global Parameters window opens.
5. Set the **Enable** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-71.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring DLSw for IP Multicasting

To configure DLSw for IP multicasting, you must:

- Configure DLSw to run in RFC 2166 multicast mode. To do this in Site Manager, set the DLSw RFC Version parameter from the DLSw Basic Global Parameters window to RFC 2166. To do this using the BCC, enter **rfc-type rfc2166** at the dlsw global prompt.
- Enable IGMP. See *Configuring IP Multicasting and Multimedia Services* for instructions.
- Supply an IP multicast group address and assign the address to a DLSw slot.

Adding IP Multicasting to a Router Running DLSw

The following sections describe how to add IP multicasting to a router running DLSw using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

Before you can configure IP multicasting, you must have DLSw, SRB, and LLC2 configured globally on the router.

To add DLSw IP multicasting support to a router, navigate to the dlsw global prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and complete the following tasks:

1. **Specify RFC 2166 as the RFC version.**

   ```
   dlsw# rfc-type rfc2166
   ```

2. **Configure multicast IP. For example, to configure multicast IP with an IP address of 239.255.255.255 and a slot mask of 2 3 4 5, enter:**

   ```
   dlsw# multicast-ip 239.255.255.255 slot mask {2 3 4 5}
   ```

3. **Configure an IP interface. For example, to configure an IP interface with an address of 2.2.2.1/255.0.0.0, enter the following commands:**

   ```
   box# ethernet 2/1
   ethernet/2/1# ip 2.2.2.1/255.0.0.0
   ip 2.2.2.2/255.0.0.0# rip
   ip 2.2.2.2/255.0.0.0# igmp
   ip 2.2.2.2/255.0.0.0# dvmrp
   ```

4. **Configure DLSw on an interface. For example:**

   ```
   box# token-ring 3/1
   token-ring/3/1# srb int 0x3
   srb/token-ring/3/1# llc2
   llc2/token-ring/3/1# dlsw
   ```

Note: IGMP is now loaded on the slot where DLSw is configured. If you want to make changes to global IGMP parameters, you must navigate to global IGMP (for example, **box**; **ip**; **igmp**).

Using Site Manager

To add DLSw IP multicasting support to a router that is already running DLSw, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw.**	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Basic Global**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameter window opens.
4. Click on the **DLSw RFC Version** parameter. Click on the **Values** button. (Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-4.)	The Values window opens.
5. Click on **RFC2166 (Multicast)**. Click on **OK**.	The Initial IGMP Global Configuration window opens (if IGMP is not configured).
6. Set IGMP global parameters (or accept the defaults) and click on **Save**.	The DLSw Multicast Configuration window opens.
7. Click on **Add**.	A second DLSw Multicast Configuration window opens.
8. Set the following parameters: • **Multicast IP Address** • **Slot** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-73.	
9. Click on **OK**.	The first DLSw Multicast Configuration window reopens.
10. Edit the parameters you want. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-75.	
11. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Adding IP Multicasting to Slots in a DLSw Router Running IP Multicast

To add IP multicasting to slots in a DLSw router that is already running IP multicasting, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw.**	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Multicast IP Table**.	The Multicast IP Table menu opens.
4. Choose **Multicast IP Table**.	The DLSw Multicast Configuration window opens.
5. Click on **Add**.	A second DLSw Multicast Configuration window opens.
6. Set the following parameters: • **Multicast IP Address** • **Slot** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-73.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The first DLSw Multicast Configuration window reopens.
8. Edit the parameters you want. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-75.	
9. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing IP Multicasting Parameters

The following sections describe how to edit IP multicasting parameters using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To edit the multicasting parameters, navigate to the multicast-ip prompt (**box**; **dlsw**; **multicast-ip** <*ip_addr*>) and enter one or more of the following parameters:

ip-addr <*ip_addr*>

ip_addr is the multicast IP address for this entry. The value is any IP address specified in dotted-decimal notation. The range is 224.0.1.0 to 239.255.255.255.

slot-mask <*slot_mask*>

slot_mask is the slot or slots that you want to receive and transmit multicast data. The values are all or none. The default is all.

For example, to change the IP address, enter:

```
multicast-ip/239.255.255.255# ip-addr 224.0.1.0
multicast-ip/224.0.1.0#
```

Using Site Manager

To edit the multicasting parameters for a selected slot, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw.**	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Multicast IP Table**.	The Multicast IP Table menu opens.
4. Choose **Multicast IP Table**.	The DLSw Multicast Configuration window opens.
5. Click on an IP multicast entry.	

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
6. Edit the parameters you want. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-75.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring DLSw Backup Peers

When you configure a primary peer, you can also configure a peer to back up the primary peer connection. The backup peer feature includes a backup peer IP address, a maximum backup connection time, a holddown wait time before considering that the primary connection is unavailable and starting the backup connection, and a time interval to ensure that no backup connection starts during a specified start and end time.

Configuring Peers for an RFC (Multicast) Peer

The following sections describe how to configure peers for an RFC multicast peer using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw backup peers for an RFC 2166 (multicast) peer, navigate to the multicast-ip prompt (**box**; **dlsw**; **multicast-ip** *<ip_addr>*) and enter:

backup-peer yes

To edit the backup peer, enter one or more of the following parameters:

backup-end-time *<bu_end_time>*

bu_end_time is the end time when a configured backup peer is available. The values are 0 to 2400. The default is 2400.

backup-hold-time *<bu_hold_time>*

bu_hold_time is the time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer. The values are 0 to 2147483647. The default is 120.

backup-ip-addr *<bu_ip_addr>*

bu_ip_addr is the IP address of a backup DLSw peer. The value is any 32-bit IP address of the form *network.host* (using dotted-decimal notation).

backup-max-uptime *<bu_max_uptime>*

bu_max_uptime is the maximum time (in seconds) that the backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer. The values are 0 to 999999. The default is 0.

backup-peer *<bu_peer>*

bu_peer indicates whether a backup peer is to be configured for the primary peer. The values are yes or no. The default is no.

backup-start-time *<bu_start_time>*

bu_start_time is the start time when a configured backup peer is available. The values are 0 to 2400. The default is 1.

backup-type *<bu_type>*

bu_type specifies the type of this DLSw backup peer. The values are multicast, v20udp, v20unknown, v20tcp, or tcp1795. The default is v20unknown.

For example, to change the backup type to multicast, enter:

```
multicast-ip/239.255.255.255# backup-type multicast
```

Using Site Manager

Note: This procedure assumes that you have already configured IP multicasting using the procedure in "Configuring DLSw for IP Multicasting."

To configure DLSw backup peers for an RFC 2166 (multicast) peer, complete the following steps:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw.**	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Multicast IP Table**.	The DLSw Multicast Configuration window opens.
4. Click on an IP multicast entry.	
5. Edit the following parameters: • **Backup Config** • **Backup IP Address** • **Backup Peer Type** • **Backup Max Up Time (sec)** • **Backup Hold Down Time (sec)** • **Backup Start Time (hhmm)** • **Backup End Time (hhmm)** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-74.	
6. Click on **Apply** to save your changes.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring Peers for an RFC 1434, 1795, or V2.0 Peer

The following sections describe how to configure peers for an RFC 1434, 1795, or DLSw V2.0 peer using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To configure DLSw backup peers for an RFC 1434, 1795, or DLSw V2.0 peer, navigate to the peer prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**; **peer/5.5.5.5**) and enter:

backup peer yes

To edit the backup peer, enter one or more of the following parameters:

backup-end-time <*bu_end_time*>

bu_end_time is the end time when a configured backup peer is available. The values are 1 to 2400. The default is 1.

backup-hold-down <*bu_hold_time*>

bu_hold_time is the time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer. The values are 0 to 21474836478. The default is 120.

backup-ip-addr <*bu_ip_addr*>

bu_ip_addr is the IP address of a backup DLSw peer.

backup-max-uptime <*bu_max_uptime*>

bu_max_uptime is the maximum time (in seconds) that the backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer. The values are 0 to 999999. The default is 0.

backup-peer <*bu_peer*>

bu_peer indicates whether to configure a backup peer for the primary peer. The values are yes and no. The default is no. A backup peer can only be configured for an RFC 1434 or RFC 1795 peer.

backup-start-time <*bu_start_time*>

bu_start_time is the start time when a configured backup peer is available. During this time period, the local router can establish a TCP connection with this backup peer if the primary peer is unreachable. The values are 0 to 2400 in *hhmm* format. The default is 1.

backup-type <*bu_type*>

bu_type is the DLSw or backup peer type. Values are multicast, v20udp, v20unknown, v20tcp, and tcp1795. The default is v20unknown.

peer-interoperability <*peer_interoperability*>

peer_interoperability allows Nortel Networks routers to operate with other vendors' routers. The values are enabled and disabled. The default is enabled.

peer-ip-addr <*peer_ip_addr*>

peer_ip_addr is the IP address of the DLSw peer.

transport-type <*transport_type*>

transport_type is the transport capability of the remote peer: TCP, UDP, or Unknown. The local router attempts to use this configured transport option when establishing a TCP connection with the remote peer. This parameter is only valid when rfc-type is set to V2.0. The values are tcp, udp, or unknown. The default is unknown.

For example, to change peer-interoperability from enabled to disabled, complete the following steps:

1. **Check the current value of the peer-interoperability parameter.**

```
peer/5.5.5.5# peer-interoperability
   peer-interoperability enabled
```

2. **Change the value to disabled**

```
peer/5.5.5.5# peer-interoperability disabled
peer/5.5.5.5#
```

Using Site Manager

To configure DLSw backup peers for an RFC 1434, 1795, or DLSw V2.0 peer, complete the following steps:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Peer IP Table**.	The DLSw Peer Configuration window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
4. Click on the remote peer you want to edit.	
5. Edit the following parameters: • **Backup Config** • **Backup IP Address** • **Backup Peer Type** • **Backup Max Up Time (sec)** • **Backup Hold Down Time (sec)** • **Backup Start Time (hhmm)** • **Backup End Time (hhmm)** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-48.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Enabling RSVP for DLSw

To enable DLSw RSVP support, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Basic Global**.	The DLSw Basic Global Parameter window opens.
4. Set the **DLSw RFC Version** parameter to either V2.0-Unicast or RFC2166-Multicast.	
5. Set the **DLSw RSVP Support** parameter to Enabled. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-6.	The DLSw RSVP Global Parameters window opens.
6. Edit the parameters you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-80.	
7. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring DLSw RSVP Peers

To configure RSVP parameters for DLSw peers, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Peer IP Table**.	The DLSw Peer Configuration window opens.
4. Click on **DLSw RSVP**.	The Edit DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters window opens.
5. Edit the parameters you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-52.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Editing DLSw RSVP Global Parameters

To edit DLSw RSVP Global parameters, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **DLSw RSVP Global**.	The Edit DLSw RSVP Global Parameters window opens.
4. Edit the parameters you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-80.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Specifying SRB or TB for DLSw over ATM Token Ring LANE

When you configure DLSw over an ATM token ring LANE interface, Site Manager uses the ATM Bridging Mode parameter to allow you to specify whether you want source route bridging or transparent bridging. To set this parameter, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Basic Interface**.	The DLSw Basic Interface Parameters window opens.
4. Set the **ATM Bridging Mode** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-9.	
5. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring MAC Address Translation

The following sections describe how to configure MAC address translation using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To enable MAC address translation, navigate to the global dlsw prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

mac-addr-translation enabled

For example, to enable MAC address translation, enter:

```
dlsw# mac-addr-translation enabled
dlsw#
```

To specify the original destination MAC address and the address to which you want it translated, navigate to the global dlsw prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

mac-translation original-mac-addr *<orig_addr>* **translated-mac-addr** *<trans_addr>*

orig_addr is the originally configured MAC address of the destination station.

trans_addr is the translated MAC address of the destination station.

For example, to translate the original MAC address from 111111111111 to 222222222222, enter:

```
dlsw# mac-translation original-mac-addr 111111111111
translated-mac-addr 222222222222
mac-translation/111111111111#
```

To change the translated destination MAC address, navigate to the mac address translation prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**; **mac-translation** *<orig_addr>*) and enter:

translated-mac-addr *<trans_addr>*

For example, to change the translated destination MAC address from 222222222222 to 444444444444, enter:

```
mac-translation/111111111111# translated-mac-addr 444444444444
mac-translation/111111111111#
```

Note: You cannot change the original destination MAC address.

Using Site Manager

To enable MAC address translation, complete the following steps:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Advanced.**	The Advanced menu opens.
4. Choose **Global**.	The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window opens.
5. Set the **MAC Address Translation Support** parameter to Enabled. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-25.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

To specify the original destination MAC address and the address to which you want it translated, complete the following steps:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **MAC Address Translation Table**.	The DLSw MAC Address Translation Table window opens.
4. Click on **Add**.	The DLSw MAC Address Translation window opens.

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
5. Edit the following parameters: • **Original Destination MAC Address** • **Translated Destination MAC Address** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-84.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The DLSw MAC Address Translation Table window opens.
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

To change the translated destination MAC address, complete the following steps:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **MAC Address Translation Table**.	The DLSw MAC Address Translation Table window opens.
4. Click on the original destination MAC address whose translated destination MAC address you want to change.	
5. Edit the **Translated Destination MAC Address** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-85.	
6. Click on **Apply**.	
7. Click on **Done**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Note: You cannot change the original destination MAC address.

Configuring BAN-2 Termination

The following sections describe how to configure BAN-2 termination using the BCC or Site Manager.

Using the BCC

To enable BAN-2 termination, navigate to the global dlsw prompt (for example, **box**; **dlsw**) and enter:

ban2-termination enabled

For example, to enable BAN-2 termination, enter:

```
dlsw# ban2-termination enabled
dlsw#
```

Using Site Manager

To enable BAN-2 termination, complete the following steps:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Advanced.**	The Advanced menu opens.
4. Choose **Global**.	The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window opens.
5. Set the **Ban2 Termination Support** parameter to Enabled. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-25.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring DLSw Prioritization

DLSw *prioritization* is an outbound filtering mechanism that allows you to assign preference to specific types of traffic supported by DLSw. DLSw prioritization does not affect traffic as it enters the router, but affects the sequence in which data leaves the router slot.

In addition to using the menu selections shown in the following sections, you can access the DLSw Protocol Prioritization windows directly from the DLSw Peer Configuration window.

To access the Global DLSw PP Parameters window, click on PP Global in the DLSw Peer Configuration window.

To access the Peer Queue Configuration window, click on PP Queues in the DLSw Peer Configuration window.

To access the DLS Priority/Outbound window, click on PP Filters in the DLSw Peer Configuration window.

Note: This section assumes that DLSw is already configured on an interface and that the peer table is complete. For information about configuring a circuit with DLSw and setting the slot, peer, and SAP parameters, refer to earlier sections in this chapter.

Configuring Default Priority Queues

You configure the default behavior of DLSw protocol prioritization using the Global DLSw PP Parameters/Defaults window. Instructions for configuring the following default priority queues are discussed in the next sections:

- Enabling default queues for configured and unconfigured peers
- Customing default queue configuration

Enabling the Default Queues for Configured and Unconfigured Peers

To enable the default queues for configured and unconfigured peers, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Prot Prioritization (Outbound)**.	
4. Choose **Global**.	The Global DLSw PP Parameters/ Defaults window opens.
5. Set the **Protocol Priority (PP)** parameter to **Enabled**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-87. If you want to use the default priority queue structure for all unconfigured peers, set the **PP for Unconfigured Peers** parameter to **Enabled**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-87.	
6. Click on **OK**.	A message appears: `Enable All DLSw Peers?`
7. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Customizing the Default Queue Configuration

When you enable DLSw protocol prioritization, every DLSw peer uses default values that control how priority queues work. You can change these values according to your network traffic needs.

Note: The default priority queue configuration applies to all configured DLSw peers except those configured with a custom priority queue. Peer-specific queue configurations take precedence over the default DLSw priority queue configuration.

To customize the default queue configuration, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Prot Prioritization (Outbound)**.	
4. Choose **Global**.	The Global DLSw PP Parameters/ Defaults window opens.
5. Edit the parameters that you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-87.	
6. Click on **OK**.	The Configuration Manager window opens.

Configuring Peer-Specific Priority Queues

You create the priority queue configuration for all configured and unconfigured DLSw peers using the Global DLSw PP Parameters/Defaults window.

You customize priority queues for particular configured DLSw peers using the Peer Queue Configuration window.

Note: Peer-specific queue configurations take precedence over the default DLSw priority queue configuration.

Priority Queues for a Specific DLSw Peer

To configure priority queues for a specific DLSw peer, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Prot Prioritization (Outbound)**.	
4. Choose **Peer Queue Entries**.	The Peer Queue Configuration window opens.
5. Click on the individual peer address on which to configure priority queues.	
6. Click on **Queues**.	The Add/Edit/Delete Queues window opens.
7. Click on **Add**.	The Add Queue window opens.
8. Set the following parameters: • **Queue Number** • **Queue Bandwidth Percent** Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-92.	
9. Click on **OK**.	The Add/Edit/Delete Queues window opens.
10. Click on **Done**.	The Peer Queue Configuration window opens.

Enabling or Disabling a Single Peer's Priority Queues

To enable or disable the queues that you configured for an individual DLSw peer, complete the following tasks:

Note: When you enable priority queues using the Peer Queue Configuration window, you must use that window to disable that peer's queues. You cannot disable queues that are already active from the Global DLSw PP Parameters/ Defaults window.

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Prot Prioritization (Outbound)**.	
4. Choose **Peer Queue Entries**.	The Peer Queue Configuration window opens.
5. Click on the individual peer address.	
6. Set the **Protocol Priority** parameter to **Enabled** or **Disabled**. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-91.	
7. Click on **Apply**.	
8. Click on **Done**.	The Peer Queue Configuration window opens.

Customizing Specific DLSw Peer Queues

When you create and enable peer-specific queues, the DLSw peer in question uses default values that dictate how the priority queues work. You can change these values according to your network traffic needs.

To customize a specific DLSw peer queue, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Prot Prioritization (Outbound)**.	
4. Choose **Peer Queue Entries**.	The Peer Queue Configuration window opens.
5. Click on the individual peer address.	
6. Edit the parameters you want to change. Click on **Help** or see the parameter descriptions beginning on page A-91.	
7. Click on **Apply**.	
8. Click on **Done**.	The Peer Queue Configuration window opens.

Creating DLSw Priority Filters

Outbound traffic filters configured with the "queue" action (*priority filters*) determine which DLSw traffic is processed into priority queues.

In addition to using the Configuration Manager windows described in this manual to configure traffic filter templates, you can also edit or copy a traffic filter template using a text editor. The Configuration Manager stores all templates for all protocols in the file */usr/wf/template/template.flt* on UNIX or */wf/config/template.flt* on the PC.

The software includes a *template.flt* file that contains two sample DLSw protocol prioritization templates that you can use for differentiating SNA and NetBIOS traffic (*NetBIOS_Queue1* and *SNA_Queue0*). To use the sample templates, copy */usr/wf/template/template.flt* to the directory where you start Site Manager (your Site Manager working directory). If that directory already contains a *template.flt* file, rename the existing file or copy the contents of the latest file into your existing file.

The sample templates place SNA traffic in Q0 (the default queue) and NetBIOS traffic in Q1. Using the default queue configuration, Q0 receives 60 percent of the bandwidth and NetBIOS receives 40 percent of the bandwidth.

To create DLSw priority filters, complete the following tasks:

Site Manager Procedure	
You do this	**System responds**
1. In the Configuration Manager window, choose **Protocols**.	The Protocols menu opens.
2. Choose **DLSw**.	The DLSw menu opens.
3. Choose **Prot Prioritization (Outbound)**.	
4. Choose **PP Traffic Filters**.	The DLS Priority/Outbound Filters window opens.
5. Click on **Template**.	The Filter Template Management window opens. For instructions on using this window to create templates, see *Configuring Traffic Filters and Protocol Prioritization*.
6. Click on **Create** to make a new template, or choose an existing template and click on **Edit**.	The Create DLS Template window or the Edit DLS Template window opens, depending on whether you chose Create or Edit.
7. In the Filter Name field, enter a name for the template.	
8. Choose a DLSw criterion. See Appendix B, “Criteria for DLSw Prioritization” for more information.	
9. Choose **Action**.	
10. Choose **Add**.	
11. Choose **Queue**.	The Queue Number window opens.
12. Set the **Queue Number** parameter. Click on **Help** or see the parameter description on page A-92. DLSw will send traffic that meets this filter’s criteria and ranges to the queue number you specify.	

(continued)

Site Manager Procedure *(continued)*	
You do this	**System responds**
13. Click on OK.	The Filter Template Management window opens.
14. Click on **Done** or, to apply the template, click on **Create**.	The DLS Priority/Outbound Filters window opens or the Create Filter window opens, depending on whether you chose Done or Create.
15. In the Create Filter window, enter a name for the filter in the Filter Name box.	
16. Click on **All DLSw Peers** to apply this template to all configured peers, or choose an individual peer from the Interfaces scroll box.	
17. Choose the template that you want to apply from the Templates scroll box.	
18. Click on **OK**.	The DLS Priority/Outbound Filters window opens.
19. To apply other templates, repeat steps 15 to 19.	

Appendix A
Site Manager Parameters

This appendix describes the DLSw service parameters in the order listed in the Site Manager windows.

In this appendix, the parameter information is organized as follows:

Topic	Page
Using the Parameter Descriptions	A-2
DLSw Basic Global Parameters	A-3
DLSw Basic Interface Parameters	A-8
DLSw Advanced Global Parameters	A-10
DLSw Advanced Interface Configuration Parameters	A-26
Adding Local Device Configuration Parameters	A-28
Local Device Configuration Parameters	A-43
Adding DLSw Peer IP Table Entry Parameters	A-44
DLSw Peer IP Table Entry Parameters	A-45
DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters	A-51
Adding DLSw Slot IP Table Entry Parameters	A-57
DLSw Slot IP Table Entry Parameter	A-59
Adding DLSw SAP Table Entry Parameters	A-60
DLSw SAP Table Entry Parameter	A-61
Adding DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry Parameters	A-62
DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry Parameter	A-64
Adding DLSw MAC Peer IP Table Entry Parameters	A-65
Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry Parameter	A-67

(continued)

Topic	Page
VCCT Slot Parameter	A-68
VCCT Circuit Configuration Parameter	A-69
Enabling VCCT Global Parameter	A-70
Enabling VCCT Interface Parameter	A-71
Adding DLSw Multicast Parameters	A-72
DLSw Multicast and Backup Peer Parameters	A-74
DLSw RSVP Global Parameters	A-79
Adding MAC Address Translation Parameters	A-84
DLSw MAC Address Translation Table	A-85
Global DLSw Protocol Priority Parameters	A-86
Peer Queue Configuration Parameters	A-90
Adding Queue Parameters	A-92
DLS Priority Filters Parameters	A-93

Using the Parameter Descriptions

Each DLSw parameter description provides information about default settings, valid parameter options, the parameter function, instructions for setting the parameter, and the management information base (MIB) object ID.

The Technician Interface allows you to modify parameters by issuing **set** and **commit** commands with the MIB object ID. This process is equivalent to modifying parameters using Site Manager. For more information about using the Technician Interface to access the MIB, see *Using Technician Interface Software*.

Caution: The Technician Interface does not verify that the value you enter for a parameter is valid. Entering an invalid value can corrupt your configuration.

You may be required to customize the LLC2, TCP/IP, SDLC, or SRB parameters as well, since they support DLSw services on the router. If so, refer to one of the guides listed in Table A-1. Otherwise, you can access parameters of the DLSw support protocols from the Protocols menu of the Configuration Manager window or the Circuit Definition window.

Table A-1. Customizing the DLSw Support Protocols

Protocol	Refer to This Nortel Networks Guide
TCP	*Configuring IP Utilities*
IP	*Configuring IP, ARP, RARP, RIP, and OSPF Services*
SRB	*Configuring Bridging Services*
LLC2	*Configuring LLC Services*
SDLC	*Configuring SDLC Services*
Multicast DVMRP	*Configuring IP Multicasting and Multimedia Services*
MOSPF	*Configuring IP Multicasting and Multimedia Services*

DLSw Basic Global Parameters

The DLSw Basic Global Parameters window (Figure A-1) contains the parameters that let you:

- Select the RFC version (DLSw RFC Version, page A-4)
- Specify the DLSw ring number (DLSw Virtual Ring ID, page A-5)
- Allow TCP sessions with DLSw peers (DLSw Reject Unconfigured Peers, page A-5)
- Enable NetBIOS support (DLSw NetBIOS Support, page A-6)
- Enable DLSw RSVP support (DLSw RSVP support, page A-6)
- Specify the DLSw peer address (DLSw Peer IP Address, page A-6)

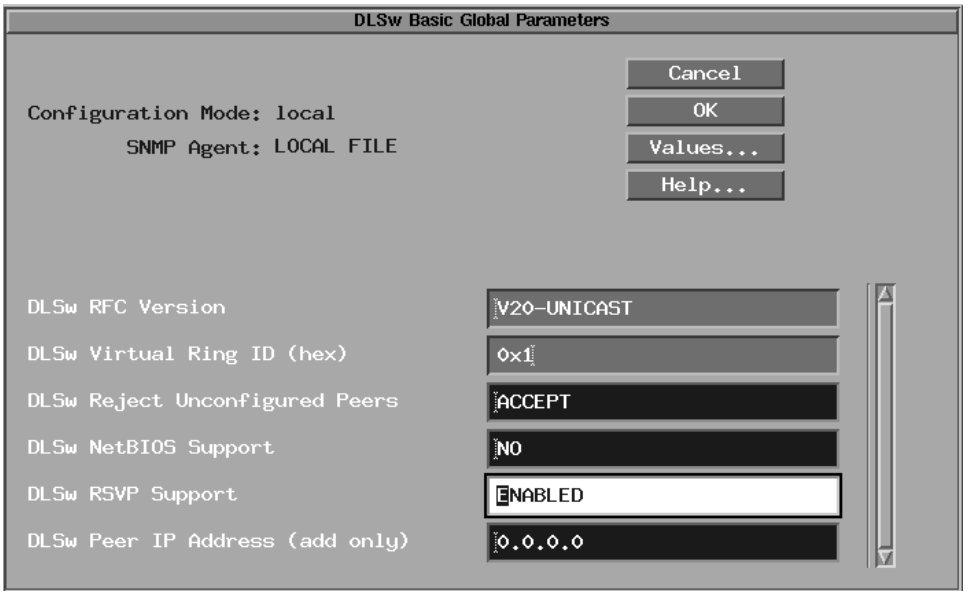

Figure A-1. DLSw Basic Global Parameters Window

Parameter: DLSw RFC Version

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Global

Default: RFC1434

Options: RFC1434 | RFC1795 | V2.0-Unicast | RFC2166-Multicast

Function: Selects the RFC implementation to run on the router: RFC 1434, RFC 1795, DLSw Version 2.0, or RFC 2166.

Instructions: Click on Values and select RFC 1434, RFC 1795, V2.0, or RFC 2166. See Chapter 1, “Data Link Switching Overview” for detailed information on these RFCs.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.28

Parameter: DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Global

Default: None

Options: Any valid, unassigned ring number from 1 to 4095 (0x001 to 0xFFF) in hexadecimal format

Function: Specifies a standard ring number that SRB uses to identify traffic that is placed on the SRB LAN by DLSw. This ring number is the first entry in the packet's RIF.

Instructions: The ring number must be unique within the network. However, all Nortel Networks routers on the network can use the same value. The number must be:

- Unique among any other ring IDs, group LAN IDs, or internal LAN IDs assigned in the network
- The same as the virtual ring number used by all other DLSw peers on the same TCP/IP network

Entering a hexadecimal value for this mandatory parameter prepares the router for DLSw services on token ring/802.5 circuits. Enter a value even if you are presently configuring DLSw services on Ethernet/802.3 circuits only. Nortel Networks recommends the value 0xB13, if this value is available.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.5

Parameter: DLSw Reject Unconfigured Peers

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Global

Default: Accept

Options: Accept | Reject

Function: Specifies whether DLSw peers in this router should allow (Accept) or disallow (Reject) TCP sessions with other DLSw peers not defined in the DLSw peer table.

Instructions: Select Accept if you want to allow TCP sessions with Nortel Networks or other DLSw peers not defined in the peer table.

Select Reject if you want to disallow TCP sessions with Nortel Networks or other DLSw peers not defined in the peer table. Disallowing TCP sessions prevents the router from learning the IP addresses of other peers in the network.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.13

Parameter: DLSw NetBIOS Support

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Global

Default: No

Options: Yes | No

Function: Specifies whether this router supports NetBIOS traffic and adds the NetBIOS SAP entry 0xF0 to the SAP table.

Instructions: Click on Values and select Yes or No. If you specify Yes, the software automatically adds the SAP 0xF0 to the SAP table.

MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter: DLSw RSVP Support

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Global

Default: Disabled

Options: Disabled | Enabled

Function: Specifies whether DLSw on this router can use RSVP.

Instructions: Set the DLSw RFC Version parameter to either V2.0-Unicast or RFC2166-Multicast. Then click on Values and select Enabled or Disabled.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.37

Parameter: DLSw Peer IP Address (add only)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Global

Default: 0.0.0.0

Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP unicast address of the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation. The valid ranges are 0.0.0.0 to 223.255.255.255 and 240.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255.

Function: Specifies the IP address of a remote DLSw peer. Once added to the DLSw peer table, this address defines a “configured peer” on the local router. Configured peers receive all DLSw-related broadcast frames for a given router or network processor.

Instructions: Enter the IP address at which the configured peer will receive all DLSw-related broadcast frames.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.3

For DLSw running over token ring (or other SRB network) or frame relay BAN (Bridged SNA, RFC 1490, or LLC over SRB), the DLSw Basic Global Parameters window (Figure A-2) contains source routing parameters that let you:

- Identify the source routing bridge (SR Bridge ID)
- Specify the source routing bridge's internal LAN ID (SR Internal LAN ID)

For instructions on configuring the source routing parameters, see *Configuring Bridging Services*.

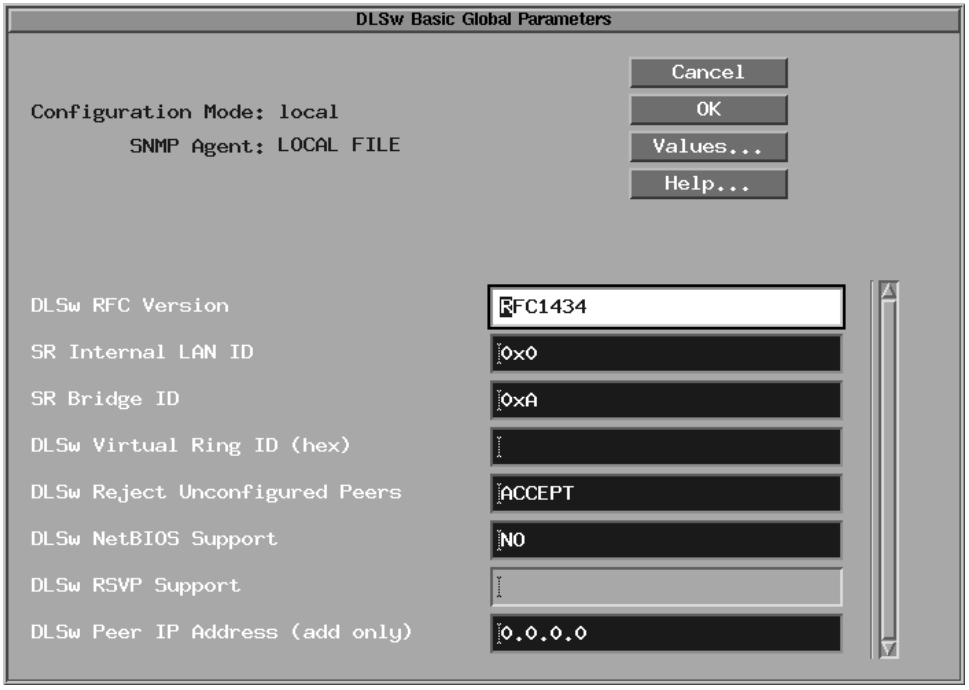

Figure A-2. DLSw Basic Global Parameters Window (for SRB)

DLSw Basic Interface Parameters

The DLSw Basic Interface Parameters window (Figure A-3) lets you specify the DLSw slot IP address (DLSw Slot IP Address).

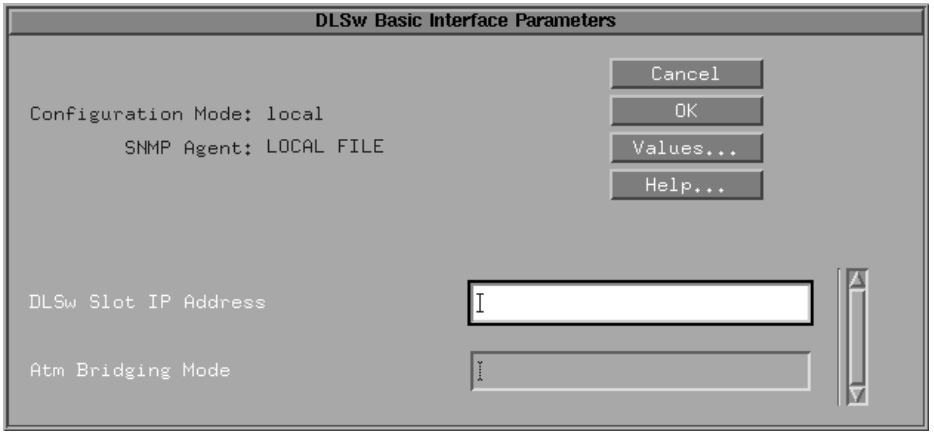

Figure A-3. DLSw Basic Interface Parameters Window

Parameter: DLSw Slot IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Interface

Default: 0.0.0.0

Options: Any IP address specified in dotted-decimal notation

Function: Specifies a unique IP address for each slot running DLSw on the router. The address cannot be reused on another slot. The IP address specifies where the TCP connection for DLSw terminates.

Instructions: Enter the appropriate IP address. If a circuitless IP address is configured, use that address for this parameter. For RFC 2166, the slot IP address must be multicast capable.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.3.1.3

Parameter: ATM Bridging Mode

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Basic Interface

Default: SRB

Options: SRB | TB

Function: You use this parameter only if you have ATM token ring LANE configured and enabled. This parameter allows DLSw to communicate with a C100 device configured in SRB mode.

Instructions: Select TB (transparent bridging) or accept the default, SRB (source route bridging).

MIB Object ID: N/A

For DLSw running over token ring or frame relay BAN, the DLSw Basic Interface Parameters window (Figure A-4) contains a source routing parameter that lets you identify the ring number of a source routing circuit (SR Interface Ring ID). For instructions on configuring this parameter, see *Configuring Bridging Services.*

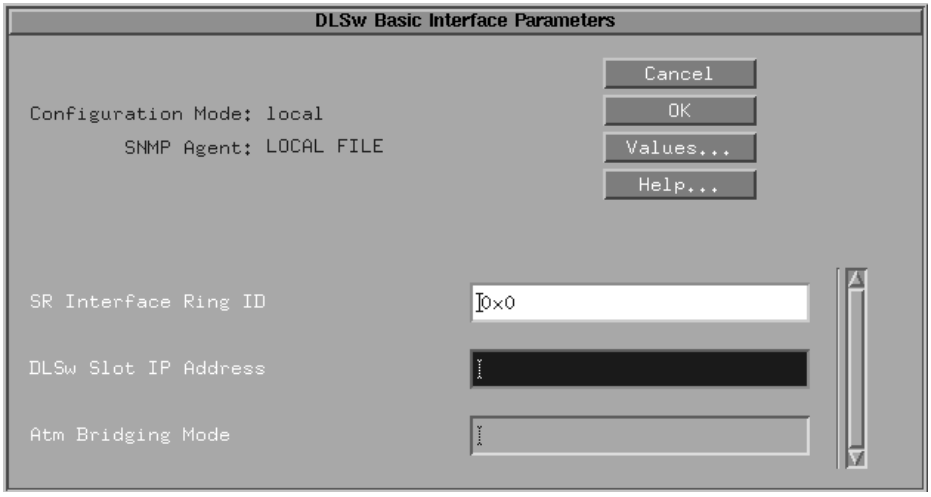

Figure A-4. DLSw Basic Interface Parameters (for SRB)

DLSw Advanced Global Parameters

The Edit DLSw Global Parameters window (Figure A-5) includes the basic global parameters that you used when you first configured DLSw on the interface. It also contains parameters that let you tune the DLSw network. For example, you can:

- Specify the TCP window size (TCP Window Size, page A-13)
- Specify the maximum number of LLC2 sessions (Max Slot Sessions, page A-15)
- Broadcast CANUREACH frames (Multislot Broadcasts, page A-20)
- Set the maximum number of fallback attempts (SNA Fallback Attempts, page A-23)
- Terminate a TCP connection after a period of inactivity (TCP Inact Time, page A-24)

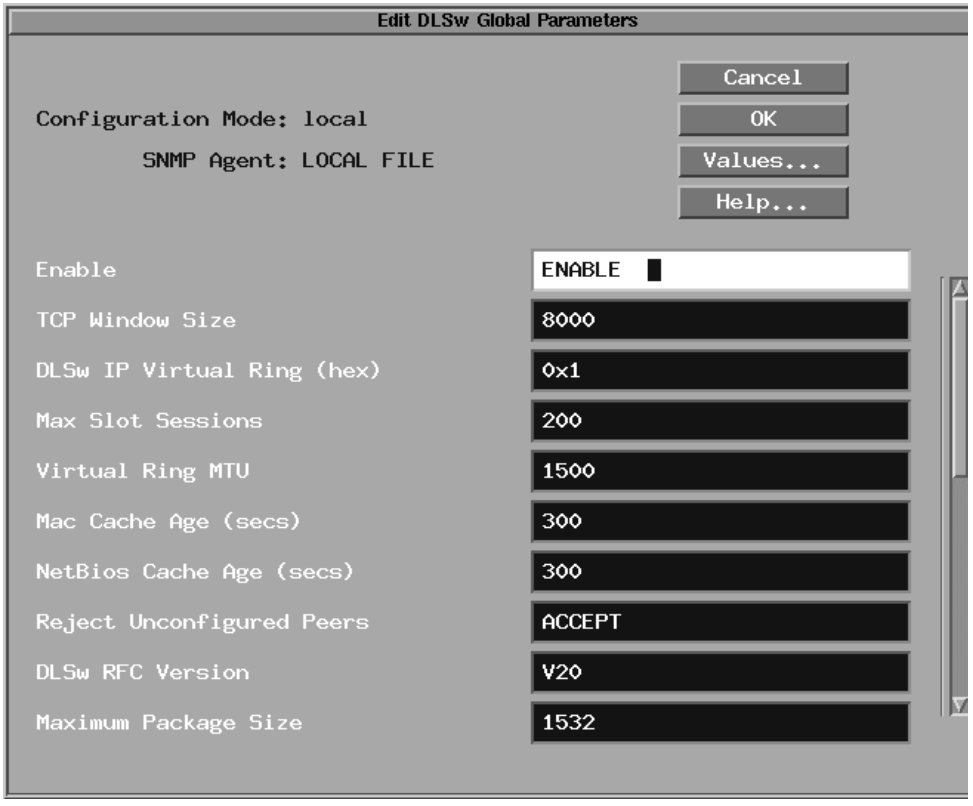

Figure A-5. Edit DLSw Global Parameters Window

Parameter:	**Enable**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global
Default:	Enable
Options:	Enable | Disable
Function:	Globally enables or disables the system software mechanisms that allow you to add DLSw interfaces to the node configuration: • Disable -- Switches every DLSw interface enabled on the router to the disabled (inactive) state. • Enable -- Reinitializes every DLSw interface on the router, based on the current setting of the associated Enable parameter and the current state of the associated circuit.
Instructions:	Select Disable to switch every DLSw interface existing on the node to the inactive state. Select Enable to globally reinitialize all DLSw interfaces configured on the node.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.2

Parameter: TCP Window Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 8000

Options: 5000 to 64000 octets

Function: Specifies the maximum amount of DLSw data (in octets) that the local and remote TCP entities can send before requiring an acknowledgment, or can receive before acknowledging. The TCP Window Size parameter informs DLSw about how much data can be outstanding on a TCP connection. The size of the window affects performance, latency, flow control, and memory usage. A larger window causes less flow control to occur with a possible increase in latency. Editing the TCP Window Size parameter affects new TCP session establishment only. Existing sessions are unaffected.

Instructions: Enter any valid number of octets. Generally, networks with slower line speeds require smaller window sizes, while networks with faster line speeds benefit from larger windows. The default value is acceptable for most networks. A TCP Window Size setting of 5000 octets may be appropriate for low-speed lines (or networks running over low-speed lines). For high-speed lines, you may want to increase this value.

The default value is based on both NetBIOS and SNA traffic. SNA and NetBIOS can have frame sizes up to 4 KB, but the default virtual ring MTU limits the frame size on the network to 1500 bytes (unless changed). Keep the window as small as possible. This allows the most consistent response time when packets are not excessively queued in TCP. Selection of this parameter depends on the WAN speed and frame size distribution.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.4

Note: Changing the value of this parameter effects scaling and the number of peers that the router can handle. If you have any questions about what the value should be, contact the Nortel Networks Technical Solutions Center.

Parameter: DLSw IP Virtual Ring (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: None

Options: Any valid, unassigned ring number from 1 to 4095 (0x001 to 0xFFF) in hexadecimal format

Function: Specifies a standard ring number that SRB uses to identify traffic that is placed on the SRB LAN by DLSw. This ring number is the first entry in the packet's RIF.

Instructions: The ring number must be unique within the network. However, all Nortel Networks routers on the network can use the same value. The number must be:

- Unique among any other ring IDs, group LAN IDs, or internal LAN IDs assigned in the network
- The same as the virtual ring number used by all other DLSw peers on the same TCP/IP network

Entering a hexadecimal value for this mandatory parameter prepares the router for DLSw services on token ring/802.5 circuits. Enter a value even if you are presently configuring DLSw services on Ethernet/802.3 circuits only. Nortel Networks recommends the value 0xB13, if this value is available.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.5

Note: The DLSw IP Virtual Ring and Virtual Ring MTU parameters that appear in the Edit DLSw Global Parameters window are primarily for compatibility with SRB networks locally attached to the router. However, Site Manager requires you to enter a value for the DLSw IP Virtual Ring, even if you are configuring DLSw services on non-SRB segments locally attached to the same router.

Parameter: Max Slot Sessions

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 200

Options: 1 to 10000

Function: Specifies the maximum number of LLC2 sessions that a given slot in the router can support for DLSw requirements. Specifying more sessions per slot has the effect of dedicating more memory and processing resources to DLSw interfaces running on the router.

Instructions: If possible, estimate the maximum number of LLC2 sessions that each DLSw peer slot may need to support concurrently. Enter a number that:

- Meets session support requirements for DLSw services provided on any slot of the router
- Allows a balance between the number of sessions supported for DLSw services on a slot and the amount of resources remaining for other protocols configured on the same slot. Use Statistics Manager to view wfDlsSlotHiWaterSessions and wfLlcInterfaceHiWaterLinks, allowing you to obtain the highest number of active sessions on a slot or an interface.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.8

Parameter: Virtual Ring MTU

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 1500

Options: 1 to 16383 bytes

Function: Specifies an MTU size for frames sent from local, LAN-attached systems to systems on remote LANs (in bytes). The smallest MTU size supported among all remote LANs in your configuration determines the maximum value of the Virtual Ring MTU parameter for the local router.

The Virtual Ring MTU allows network administrators to limit the size of packets traversing the network. Based on the value that you specify, the router enters the appropriate maximum MTU into any SRB explorer packet that uses DLSw services.

Instructions: Enter any number of bytes equal to or greater than 1.

Ethernet networks support an MTU size of 1500 bytes, while token ring networks support much larger MTUs. When configuring DLSw for local token ring-to-Ethernet translation bridge topologies, the Virtual Ring MTU parameter should not exceed 1500. This sets the token ring MTU size so that Ethernet end stations can accept the token ring traffic.

Entering a new value or accepting the default value for this mandatory parameter helps to prepare end stations for the MTUs of remote LANs.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.10

Note: The DLSw IP Virtual Ring and Virtual Ring MTU parameters that appear in the Edit DLSw Global Parameters window are primarily for compatibility with SRB networks locally attached to the router. However, Site Manager requires you to enter a value for the DLSw IP Virtual Ring, even if you are configuring DLSw services on non-SRB segments locally attached to the same router.

Parameter: MAC Cache Age (secs)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 300

Options: 0 to 4294967295 seconds

Function: Specifies the maximum number of seconds that inactive MAC addresses can exist in the MAC-to-DLSw mapping cache.

Instructions: Enter a value to limit the amount of memory that inactive MAC cache entries consume for DLSw services on the router. Enter 0 to disable MAC caching.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.11

Parameter: NetBIOS Cache Age (secs)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 300

Options: 21 to 4294967295 seconds

Function: Specifies the maximum number of seconds that inactive NetBIOS names can exist in the NetBIOS-to-DLSw peer mapping cache.

Instructions: Enter an interval to limit the amount of memory that inactive NetBIOS cache entries consume for DLSw services on the router.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.12

Parameter: Reject Unconfigured Peers

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Accept

Options: Accept | Reject

Function: Specifies whether DLSw peers in this router should allow (Accept) or disallow (Reject) TCP sessions with other DLSw peers not defined in the DLSw peer table.

Instructions: Select Accept if you want to allow TCP sessions with Nortel Networks or other DLSw peers not defined in the peer table.

Select Reject if you want to disallow TCP sessions with Nortel Networks or other DLSw peers not defined in the peer table. Disallowing TCP sessions prevents the router from learning the IP addresses of other peers in the network.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.13

Parameter: DLSw RFC Version

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: RFC1434

Options: RFC1434 | RFC1795 | V2.0 (Unicast) | RFC2166 (Multicast)

Function: Selects the RFC implementation to run on the router: RFC 1434, RFC 1795, DLSw Version 2.0, or RFC 2166.

Instructions: Click on Values and select RFC 1434, RFC 1795, DLSw Version 2.0, or RFC 2166. See Chapter 1, "Data Link Switching Overview" for detailed information on these RFCs.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.28

Parameter: Maximum Package Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 1532

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes

Function: Specifies the maximum amount of information (in bytes) that can reside in one package when sending multiple DLSw frames in a single TCP frame for transmission over a wide area network. DLSw does not split SSP frames (SSP header and user data) among multiple packages.

Instructions: Specify a value smaller than the TCP Window Size parameter and less than or equal to the Virtual Ring MTU size for the network, minus the size of the TCP/IP and MAC headers. Specify 0 to disable packaging.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.23

Parameter: Packaging Timeout (msec)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 10

Options: 0 to 2147483647 milliseconds

Function: Specifies the time interval (in milliseconds) to delay a package before sending it to TCP. This value is based on the Packaging Threshold parameter. The value should not be greater than the time it takes to send the number of outstanding bytes before packaging begins.

Instructions: Enter any positive integer from 0 to 2147483647.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.24

Parameter: Packaging Threshold

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 20

Options: 0 to 100 percent

Function: Specifies the percentage of the DLSw TCP window that must be in use if DLSw is to delay sending a package (one that is currently being built). The default value (20 percent) allows DLSw to send a package to TCP only if the TCP Window is currently using less than 3200 bytes (20 percent of the default TCP Window Size of 16,000 bytes). This mechanism ensures that small packages, such as acknowledgments, are not delayed.

Instructions: Enter a value from 0 to 100 percent. A value of 50 percent indicates that if 50 percent of the TCP window size is being used, DLSw issues the delay, as specified by the Packaging Timeout parameter.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.25

Parameter: Multislot Broadcasts

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Enable

Options: Enable | Disable

Function: Broadcasts received CANUREACH frames over all DLSw slots, or to the specific DLSw slots on which the frames are received.

By default, when the router receives CANUREACH frames over a DLSw port, the software first converts the frames to SNA format before broadcasting the frames across all configured DLSw slots. If you disable this feature, the router broadcasts the frames only over the DLSw slots on which the frames are received.

Instructions: Click on Values and select Enable or Disable.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.26

Note: Because a DLSw slot can have multiple ports (or interfaces), the Multislot Broadcasts parameter setting affects all DLSw ports on the slot on which CANUREACH frames are received.

Parameter: Initial Pacing Window

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 5

Options: 5 to 100

Function: Specifies the initial number of received data frames that the local DLSw router permits during an established connection with another DLSw router running RFC 1795 or DLSw Version 2.0 or RFC 2166. The two DLSw routers advertise their initial pacing value to each other over capabilities exchange messages.

Instructions: Enter a value from 5 to 100. Depending on the amount of network traffic during the session, the router may increase or decrease the pacing window size. An increase in the window size means that the router is granting permission to receive more data frames from the sending DLSw router. A decrease in the window size means that the router is reducing the number of data frames that it will accept from the sending DLSw router.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.27

Parameter: NetBIOS Session Alive Filter

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Enable

Options: Enable | Disable

Function: Enables or disables the NetBIOS session alive frame transmissions. Continuously sending session alive frames can cause lines to remain active unnecessarily, possibly increasing the usage cost of the line.

Instructions: Click on Values and select Enable or Disable. Select Enable to start the NetBIOS session alive filter, stopping session alive frame transmissions. Select Disable to cancel the filter and continue session alive frame transmissions every 30 seconds.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.29

Parameter: KeepAlive Time (sec)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 60

Options: 0 to 2147483647 seconds

Function: The TCP KeepAlive Time parameter specifies how often (in seconds) the router sends a signal to the peer router to check that the peer router is working correctly and can receive messages. You enable the parameter by specifying a nonzero value.

When a keepalive packet goes unacknowledged by the remote peer, retransmission begins at the local peer router. Tune the keepalive interval based on the total time it takes to send and receive acknowledgment from the remote peer.

Since keepalive packets are sent only on idle lines, increasing the keepalive interval may decrease the cost of an idle network. In busy networks, the keepalive interval is not necessary. Frequent traffic for TCP transmission performs the same function as a keepalive setting.

Instructions: Enter a value appropriate for the network from 0 to 2147483647 seconds. Nortel Networks recommends that you set this parameter to the same value on the peer router to maintain synchronization. The default is 60 seconds.

Enter the number of seconds that you want for the keepalive time interval, or enter 0 to disable the keepalive feature.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.16

Parameter: KeepAlive Retry Timer (sec)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 60

Options: 0 to 600 seconds

Function: The KeepAlive Retry Timer parameter specifies the maximum time (in seconds) between successive retransmissions of keepalive packets. If an acknowledgment is not received by the local peer router within the TCP keepalive retry timeout, the local peer router retransmits the keepalive packet. The router continues to retransmit keepalive packets at every TCP keepalive retry timeout until it receives an acknowledgment from the remote peer, or until TCP reaches the keepalive retries setting.

Instructions: Enter a value from 0 to 600 seconds.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.30

Parameter: KeepAlive Retries

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 4

Options: 0 to 99

Function: TCP determines a lost connection (either a failed link with no rerouting possible, or the remote router is unavailable) when TCP attempts to deliver data. If TCP does not receive an acknowledgment to transmitted keepalive packets after a series of retries, it declares the connection inoperable and informs DLSw. The TCP KeepAlive Retries is the number of times TCP attempts to establish or maintain a connection.

Instructions: Enter a value from 0 to 99.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.31

Parameter: SNA Fallback Attempts

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 5

Options: 0 to 2147483647

Function: Specifies the maximum number of attempts the local router should make when establishing a connection with a remote DLSw peer before reverting to earlier DLSw RFCs. The SNA Fallback Attempts parameter operates with DLSw Version 2.0 peers that you configured with the Transport Type parameter set to Unknown.

An "unknown" peer operates in DLSw Version 2.0 mode. Unless a TCP connection already exists, the local peer will use UDP explorer frames to locate the remote peer MAC address prior to establishing the connection. The remote UDP peer can revert to RFC1795 protocols only if it receives a TCP connection from the local peer along with a capabilities exchange message.

Instructions: Enter the number of attempts from 0 to 2147483647. Enter 0 to specify that only one connection attempt should be made before reverting to an earlier RFC.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.32

Parameter: NetBIOS Fallback Time (sec)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 180

Options: 0 to 2147483647 seconds

Function: Specifies the period of time (in seconds) before a peer router (with a Transport Type of Unknown) reverts to RFC 1795 protocols when a NetBIOS name query from the router goes unacknowledged. The NetBIOS Fallback Time parameter operates with DLSw Version 2.0 and RFC 2166.

Instructions: Enter a time from 0 to 2147483647 seconds.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.33

Parameter: TCP Inact Time (sec)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: 300

Options: 0 to 2147483647 seconds

Function: Specifies the period of inactivity to elapse (in seconds) before terminating a TCP connection. Inactivity results after a prior session has terminated, or if no data has been transferred. The TCP Inact Time parameter functions with DLSw Version 2.0 and with configured DLSw backup peers.

This parameter operates with the TCP Inact Method parameter.

Instructions: Enter a time from 0 to 2147483647 seconds.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.34

Parameter: TCP Inact Method

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Circuits

Options: Never | Circuits | Data

Function: Specifies the type of connection that will cause a TCP connection to terminate when the TCP inactivity time expires. Inactivity results when there is no active DLSw circuit between the local router and a remote peer, or if no data has been transferred between the peers. The TCP Inact Method parameter functions with DLSw Version 2.0, RFC 2166, or configured DLSw backup peers.

This parameter operates with the TCP Inact Time parameter.

Instructions: Click on Values and select Never, Circuits, or Data:

- Select Never to keep the TCP connection active when the inactivity time expires.
- Select Circuits to disable the TCP connection when a session does not exist between the peers when the inactivity timer expires.
- Select Data to disable the TCP connection if no data has been transferred between the peers when the inactivity timer expires.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.35

Parameter: Multislot Cache Update

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Enabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Allows broadcast messages inbound from the DLC to be sent to all active DLSw slots, thereby preventing peers from establishing connections to multiple local DLSw slots. This parameter allows you to control the number of TCP connections and the amount of broadcast traffic on the network.

Instructions: Accept the default, Enabled, or choose Disabled.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.49

Parameter: MAC Address Translation Support

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Disabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Enables or disables MAC address translation.

Instructions: Accept the default, Disabled, or choose Enabled. Choosing Enabled activates the MAC Address Translation Table option from the DLSw menu. This option lets you specify an original destination MAC address and the destination address to which you want to translate it.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.50

Parameter: BAN2 Termination Support

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Global

Default: Disabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Enables or disables BAN2 termination. BAN2 termination allows you to locally terminate at the router SRB and LLC-2 frames destined for a token ring or frame relay network. The router then forwards the traffic to the destination network using DLSw.

Instructions: Accept the default, Disabled, or choose Enabled.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.51

DLSw Advanced Interface Configuration Parameters

The DLSw Interface Configuration window (Figure A-6) contains two parameters that let you enable or disable a DLSw interface for a specific circuit.

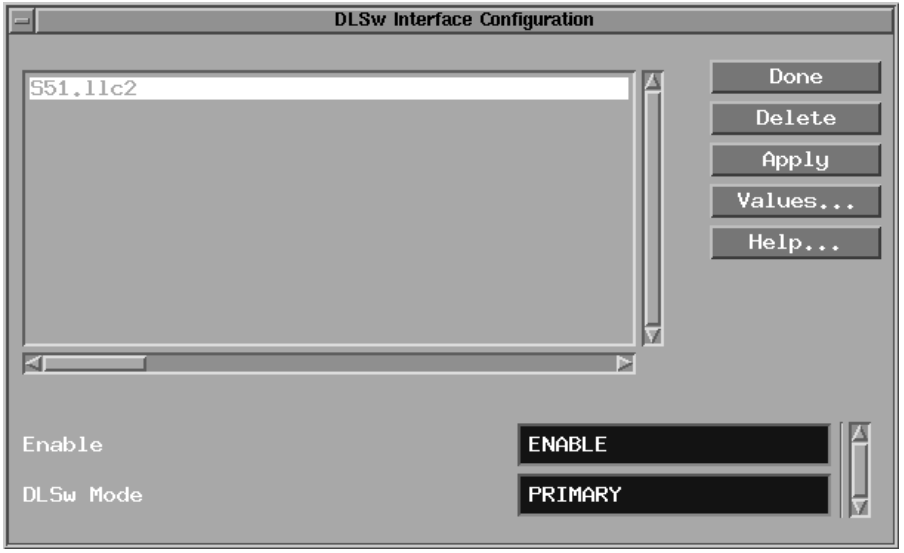

Figure A-6. DLSw Interface Configuration Window

Parameter: Enable

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Interfaces

Default: Enable

Options: Enable | Disable

Function: Enables or disables data link switching over this interface.

- Enable -- Initializes the DLSw interface that you added to a physical circuit. Also use the Enable setting to reinitialize an existing DLSw interface disabled earlier. The state of the interface depends on the up/down state of the associated circuit and slot.
- Disable -- Switches a DLSw interface from the enabled (up) state to the disabled (down) state.

Instructions: Select Enable if you previously set this parameter to Disable and now want to reenable data link switching over this interface.

Select Disable only if you want to disable data link switching over this interface. This cancels all active LLC2 sessions currently supported by the interface.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.2.1.2

Parameter: DLSw Mode

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Advanced > Interfaces

Default: Primary

Options: Primary | Secondary PP | Secondary MP | Negotiable

Function: Specifies the type of link station you are configuring on this node.

A primary link station controls a data link, issues commands, polls secondary stations, and initiates error recovery procedures. Only one link station on an SDLC line can be the primary station; all other stations on the line must be secondary. When configured as a primary SDLC link station, the router communicates with downstream PU 2.0, PU 2.1, and PU 4 nodes (multipoint configurations only).

A secondary link station receives commands and responds to primary link station polls. When configured as a secondary SDLC link station, the router emulates a PU 2.0 or PU 4 node (multipoint configurations only).

When configured as a negotiable SDLC link station, the router supports connections to PU 4 devices only.

Instructions: Click on Values and select Primary, Secondary PP (point-to-point), Secondary MP (multipoint), or Negotiable.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.2.1.8

Adding Local Device Configuration Parameters

The Local Device Configuration window (Figure A-7) contains parameters that let you define the SDLC devices that you want to appear as natively attached to the LAN. When you define such devices, you map the devices to LAN MAC and SAP addresses.

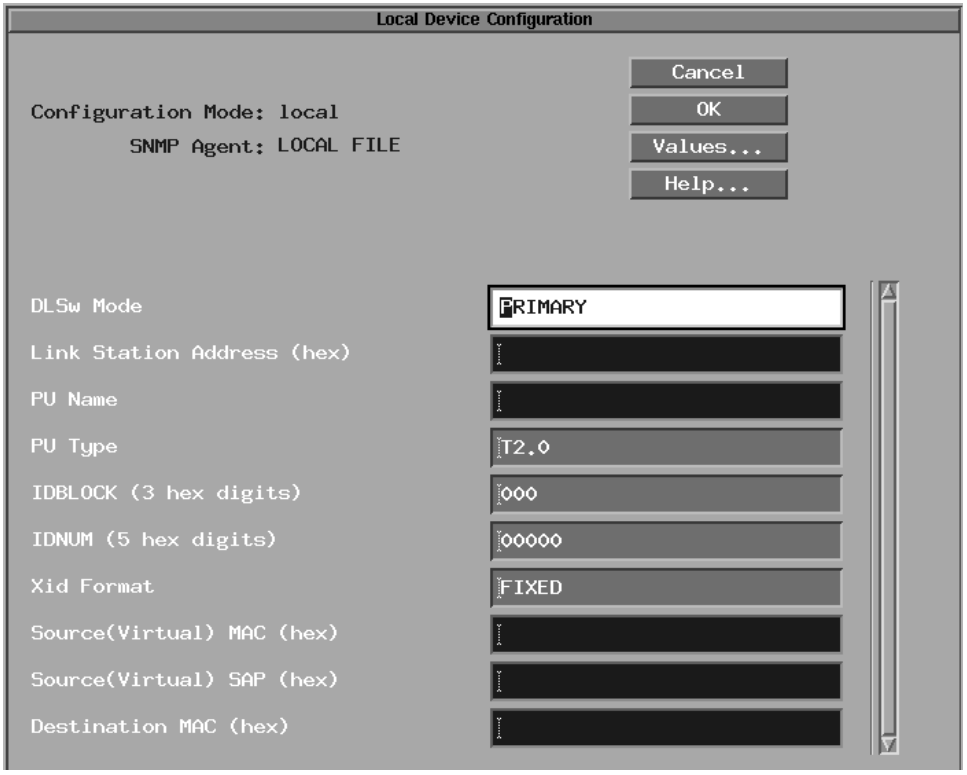

Figure A-7. Local Device Configuration Window

Parameter: DLSw Mode

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: Primary

Options: Primary | Secondary PP | Secondary MP | Negotiable

Function: Specifies the type of link station you are configuring on this node.

A primary link station controls a data link, issues commands, polls secondary stations, and initiates error recovery procedures. Only one link station on an SDLC line can be the primary station; all other stations on the line must be secondary. When configured as a primary SDLC link station, the router communicates with downstream PU 2.0, PU 2.1, and PU 4 nodes (multipoint configurations only).

A secondary link station receives commands and responds to primary link station polls. When configured as a secondary SDLC link station, the router emulates a PU 2.0 or PU 4 node (multipoint configurations only).

When configured as a negotiable SDLC link station, the router supports connections to PU 4 devices only.

Instructions: Click on Values and select Primary, Secondary PP (point-to-point), Secondary MP (multipoint), or Negotiable.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.2.1.8

Parameter: Link Station Address (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid hexadecimal link station address from 0x01 to 0xFE

Function: Specifies the address of the link station. This parameter must match the polling address defined in the SDLC-attached device.

Instructions: Enter 0x followed by the link station address.

MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter: PU Name

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid, 8-byte ASCII name

Function: Specifies the name of the adjacent link station. This name uniquely identifies the station for statistics and alert messages.

Instructions: Enter the 8-byte ASCII link station name.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.7.5.1.32

Parameter: PU Type

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: T1.0 | T2.0 | T2.1 | T4

Function: Specifies the type of the XID-sending node. This parameter is used with the IDBLOCK, IDNUM, and XID Format parameters to determine the station XID value. The value must match the PU type of the SDLC-attached device. For some devices, this is a fixed value.
For example:

- IBM 5394 -- PU 1.0 or PU 2.1 (if the RPQ 8Q0775 patch has been applied to the device)
- IBM 3274 -- PU 2.0
- IBM 5494 -- PU 2.1
- IBM 3745, IBM 3720, and IBM 3725 -- PU 4 (if this station will be used for PU 4-to-PU 4 communication)

For other devices, the PU type is explicitly defined. For example, the IBM 3174 can be configured as PU 2.0 or PU 2.1.

Instructions: Choose T1.0, T2.0, T2.1, or T4.

MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter: IDBLOCK

Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add
Default:	None
Options:	Any 3-digit hexadecimal value
Function:	Specifies the block number, which must match the host's IDBLOCK parameter value that identifies incoming connection requests. This parameter is used with the PU Type, IDNUM, and XID Format parameters to determine the station XID value. Table A-2 lists the IDBLOCK numbers.
Instructions:	Obtain the configured value at the host (from VTAM or other host operating system) for this device.
MIB Object ID:	N/A

Note: The IDBLOCK and IDNUM parameters are not required on PU 1.0, PU 2.1, or PU 4 nodes, when both the host and client attachments are SDLC, or when the host attachment is a Local Major Node, such as 3174 DSPU or ESM 5745 DSPU.

Table A-2. IDBLOCK Numbers for Switched PUs

Device	IDBLOCK Number
NPSI	003
3770	004
3650/3680	005
6100/3790	006
NTO, 3767	007
S/34	00E
3774	011
3x74	017
3276	018
8775	019
S/1	021
S/38	022
5520	031
5280	032
PC/SRJE	03D
S/36	03E
4680	04D
APPC/PC	050
AS/400	056
6150	05C
OS/2 EE	05D
WSP	05E
PC/3270	061
RS/6000	071
Subarea	FFF

Parameter: IDNUM

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: Any 5-digit hexadecimal value from 00000 to FFFFF (for T1.0 or T2.0 nodes)

Function: Specifies the ID number, which must match the host's IDNUM parameter value that identifies incoming connection requests. This parameter is used with the PU Type, IDBLOCK, and XID Format parameters to determine the station XID value.

Instructions: Obtain the configured value at the host (from VTAM or other host operating system) for this device. Enter a 5-digit hexadecimal value from 00000 to FFFFF for T1.0 or T2.0 nodes.

MIB Object ID: N/A

Note: The IDBLOCK and IDNUM parameters are not required on PU 1.0, PU 2.1, or PU 4 nodes, when both the host and client attachments are SDLC, or when the host attachment is a Local Major Node, such as 3174 DSPU or ESM 5745 DSPU.

IDBLOCK and IDNUM (required for PU 2.0 devices only) must match the same values on the host. The 3-digit block number and the 5-digit ID number may be defined on the host as a single 8-digit XID.

Parameter: XID Format

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: FIXED | VARIABLE1 (2.0 or 2.1) | VARIABLE2 (2.1 only)

Function: Specifies the format of the XID I-field. This parameter is typically set to FIXED for PU 2.0 devices, VARIABLE1 for PU 1.0 devices, and VARIABLE2 for PU 2.1 devices.

Instructions: Enter one of the following options:

- FIXED -- Fixed format; used most for PU 2.0 devices
- VARIABLE1 -- Variable format (for T1.0/T2.0/T2.1 to T4/T5 node exchanges); used most for PU 1.0 devices
- VARIABLE2 -- Variable format; used most for PU 2.1 devices (for T2.1 to T2.1/T4/T5 node exchanges)

MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter: Source (Virtual) MAC (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: Any standard MSB token ring MAC address

Function: Specifies the source MAC address of an emulated token ring end station for this device. This parameter must be defined in the LAN gateway when using an IBM 3174 or compatible gateway. Other gateways typically do not define this value.

Instructions: Enter the 12-digit hexadecimal source MAC address that you want to assign to the SDLC device. The address should be in MSB format, and it should be unique in the network (even among other source addresses on the router).

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.6

Parameter: Source (Virtual) SAP (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 0x4

Options: 0x01 to 0xFE

Function: Specifies the source SAP of an emulated token ring or Ethernet end station for this device. This parameter must be entered into the SAP table of the source and destination routers. The default (04) is included in the default SAP table.

Instructions: Begin the address with 0x and enter a one-digit or two-digit hexadecimal source SAP address associated with this device. Typical values are multiples of 4.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.7

Parameter: Destination MAC (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: None

Options: Any standard MSB token ring MAC address

Function: Identifies (with the destination SAP) the token ring or Ethernet host that the local device will reach using SDLC services. This parameter must match the MAC address of the LAN gateway, using MSB (token ring) format.

Instructions: Consult your host system manager for the host MAC address. Enter the 12-digit hexadecimal address.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.8

Parameter: Destination SAP (hex)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 0x4

Options: 0x01 to 0xFE

Function: Identifies (with the destination MAC) the token ring or Ethernet host that the local device will reach using SDLC services. This parameter must be entered into the SAP table of the source and destination routers. The default (04) is included in the default SAP table.

Instructions: Consult your host system manager for the host SAP address. Enter the 0x prefix followed by a one-digit or two-digit hexadecimal address.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.9

Parameter: MAXOUT

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add
Default: 7
Options: 1 to 127
Function: Controls the maximum number of consecutive frames that an SDLC link station can send without acknowledgment.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 127. For SDLC modulo 128, set this parameter to 127.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.7.5.1.10

Parameter: MAXDATA

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add
Default: 2057
Options: 265 | 521 | 1033 | 2057 | 4105
Function: Specifies the maximum frame size that SDLC supports. This value includes the transmission header (TH), request header (RH), and request unit (RU).
Instructions: Enter a maximum frame size equal to or larger than the largest frame size that will be received.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.7.5.1.7

Parameter: Canureach Timer

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add
Default: 30
Options: 0 to 3600 seconds
Function: Specifies the time interval (in seconds) after which the router sends a CANUREACH message to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session.
Instructions: Enter the number of seconds that you want for the time interval. For example, enter 1 to transmit a CANUREACH message once per second, or enter 3600 to transmit the message once per hour. Enter 0 if you do not want to transmit a CANUREACH message.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.11

Parameter: Canureach Retries

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 4294967295

Options: 0 to 4294967295

Function: Specifies the number of times a CANUREACH message is initially sent to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session.

Instructions: Enter the number of retries you want. Enter 0 if you do not want to transmit CANUREACH messages. Leave the default value 4294967295 to send an infinite number of CANUREACH messages for this connection.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.12

Parameter: Canureach Timer2

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 30

Options: 0 to 3600 seconds

Function: Specifies the time interval (in seconds) after which the router sends a CANUREACH message to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session. This parameter setting becomes active when the Canureach Timer and Canureach Retries settings expire.

Set the Canureach Timer2 and the Canureach Retries2 parameters in configurations where you want to switch to a longer interval, if the initial connection does not occur within the Canureach Timer and Canureach Retries settings. The slow poll timer then uses the Canureach Timer2 and Canureach Retries2 settings.

Instructions: Enter the number of seconds that you want for the time interval. For example, enter 1 to transmit a CANUREACH message once per second, or enter 3600 to transmit the command once per hour. Enter 0 if you do not want to transmit a CANUREACH message.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.17

Parameter: Canureach Retries2

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 4294967295

Function: Specifies the number of times a CANUREACH message is sent to the remote DLSw peer to establish a session. This parameter setting becomes active when the standard Canureach Retries parameter setting expires.

Set the Canureach Timer2 and the Canureach Retries2 parameters in configurations where you want to switch to a longer interval, if the initial connection does not occur within the standard Canureach Timer and Canureach Retries settings.

Instructions: Enter the number of retries that you want. Leave the default value of 0 if you do not want to transmit CANUREACH messages. Enter 4294967295 to send an infinite number of CANUREACH messages for this connection.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.18

Parameter: Link Station Timer

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 30

Options: 0 to 3600 seconds

Function: Sets the time interval (in seconds) after which the router sends a connect request to the local SDLC device to establish a session.

Instructions: Enter the number of seconds that you want for the time interval. For example, enter 1 to send a connect request once a second, or enter 3600 to send a connect request once an hour. Enter 0 if you do not want to send connect requests.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.13

Parameter: Link Station Retries

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 10

Options: 0 to 4294967295

Function: Specifies the maximum number of times that a connect request is sent to the local SDLC device to establish a session.

Instructions: Enter the number of retries you want. Enter 0 if you do not want to send connect requests. Enter 4294967295 to send an infinite number of connect requests for this connection.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.14

Parameter: SDLC Receive Credit

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 10

Options: 0 to 200

Function: Specifies the maximum number of frames that the SDLC can send to DLSw. This parameter is for flow control.

Instructions: Enter the maximum number of frames that you want the SDLC to send to DLSw. For example, enter 1 if you want DLSw to accept one frame from the SDLC before it updates the SDLC credit. Enter 0 if you want DLSw to receive an infinite number of frames from the SDLC without updating the SDLC credit.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.15

Parameter: SDLC Transmit Credit

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: 10

Options: 0 to 200

Function: Specifies the maximum number of frames that DLSw can send to the SDLC.

Instructions: Enter the maximum number of frames that you want DLSw to send to the SDLC. For example, enter 1 if you want DLSw to send only one frame to the SDLC until it receives a credit update from the SDLC. Enter 0 if you want DLSw to send an infinite number of frames to the SDLC without updating the SDLC credit.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.16

Parameter: Enable XID PassThru

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add

Default: Disable

Options: Enable | Disable

Function: Specifies whether to pass XID to the SDLC when the host is connected to a token ring LAN or other media supporting Switched Major Nodes and the remote device is SDLC. This parameter is used for PU 2.1 circuits.

Instructions: Accept the default, Disable, or change to Enable.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.19

Parameter:	**Device Activation Seq**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices > Add
Default:	Local Device First
Options:	Local Device First | Peer First
Function:	Specifies the sequence of activation for SDLC PU2.0 fixed-format primary devices. Local Device First specifies that DLS establishes a connection with the SDLC end station first. Once the local device responds successfully, DLS then starts up the SSP connection to the peer. Peer First specifies that DLS starts the SSP connection first, and contacts the SDLC end station only after receiving a contact message from the peer.
Instructions:	Accept the default, Local Device First, or change to Peer First.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.12

Local Device Configuration Parameters

The DLS Local Device Configuration window (Figure A-8) allows you to edit the parameters for a selected SDLC device.

Figure A-8. DLS Local Device Configuration Window

Parameter: Disable

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Local Devices

Default: Enable

Options: Enable | Disable

Function: Enables or disables the DLSw local device.

Instructions: Set to Disable if you want to temporarily disable the local device, rather than delete it. Set to Enable if you want to reinitialize the local device.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.12.1.2

For the rest of the parameter descriptions, see the preceding section, "Adding Local Device Configuration Parameters."

Adding DLSw Peer IP Table Entry Parameters

The DLSw Peer Configuration window (Figure A-9) contains parameters that let you add remote peers to the DLSw peer IP table. The DLSw peer IP table contains the list of all configured remote peers known to the local router.

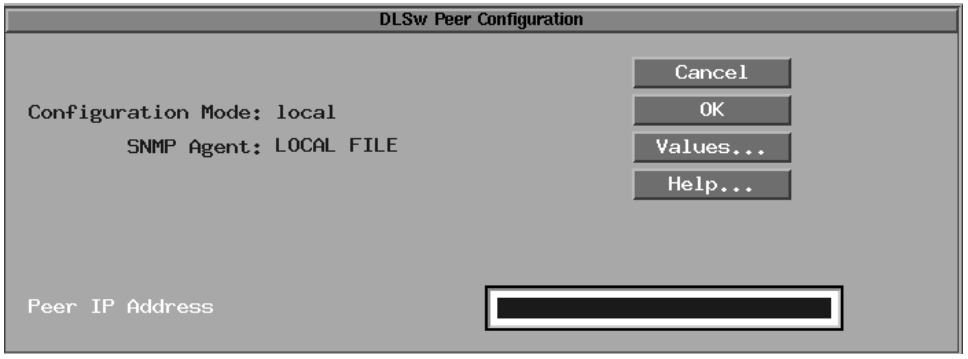

Figure A-9. Add DLSw Peer Configuration Window

Parameter: Peer IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw >s Peer IP Table > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP unicast address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation. The valid ranges are 0.0.0.0 to 223.255.255.255 and 240.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255.

Function: Specifies the IP address of a remote DLSw peer. Adding this address to the DLSw peer IP table defines a configured peer to the local router. Configured peers receive all DLSw-related broadcast frames from the local router.

Instructions: Enter the IP address where the configured peer should receive all DLSw-related broadcast frames.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.3

DLSw Peer IP Table Entry Parameters

The DLSw Peer Configuration window (Figure A-10) contains several parameters that let you customize remote peers that you have already configured.

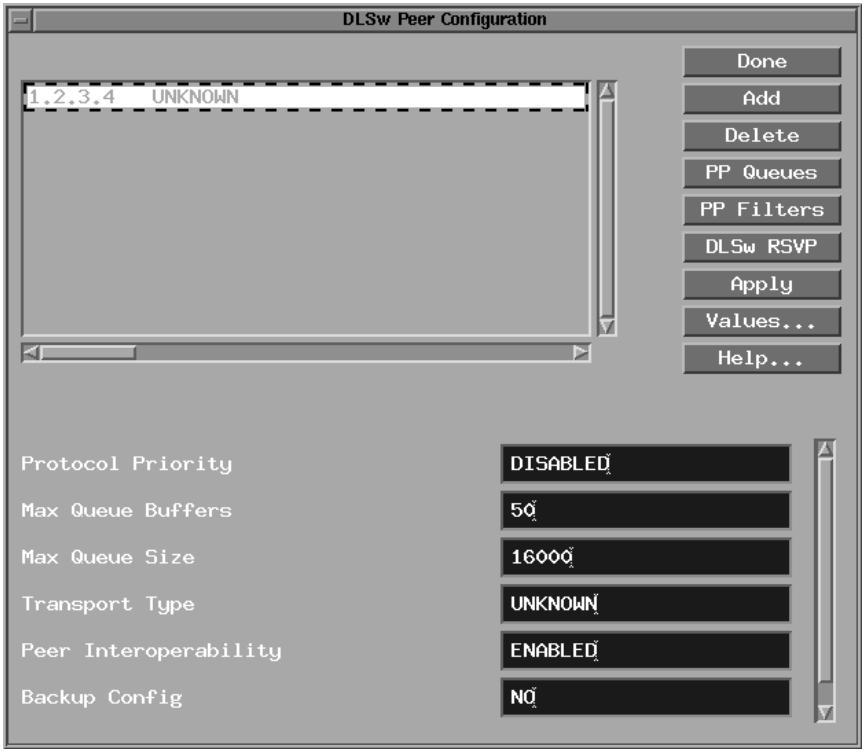

Figure A-10. DLSw Peer Configuration Window

Parameter: Protocol Priority

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: Disabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Toggles protocol prioritization on and off for this peer. If you set this parameter to Disabled, priority filters will be disabled on this peer. Setting this parameter to Disabled is useful if you want to temporarily disable protocol priority but leave the outbound filters in place.

Instructions: Set to Disabled if you want to temporarily disable all protocol prioritization activity on this peer. Set to Enabled if you previously disabled protocol prioritization on this peer and now want to reenable it.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.5

Parameter: Max Queue Buffers

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: 50

Options: 10 to 2147483647

Function: Specifies the maximum number of packets in each of this peer's queues.

Instructions: Enter a number of packets to increase or decrease the default buffer size of 50 packets.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.6

Parameter: Max Queue Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: 16000

Options: 5000 to 2147483647

Function: Specifies the maximum size of each of this peer's queues.

Instructions: Enter a number of bytes to increase or decrease the default queue size of 16000 bytes.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.7

Parameter: Transport Type

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: Unknown

Options: TCP | UDP | Unknown

Function: Specifies the transport capabilities at the remote peer: TCP, UDP, or Unknown. The local router attempts to use this configured transport option when establishing a TCP connection with the remote peer. The Transport Type parameter is available only when the DLSw RFC Version parameter is set to V2.0.

A remote peer configured with the transport type TCP operates in RFC 1795 mode. A remote peer configured with the transport type UDP operates in DLSw Version 2.0 mode only. When set to UDP, the router does not make any attempts to revert to RFC 1795.

An "unknown" peer operates in DLSw Version 2.0 mode. Unless a TCP connection already exists, the local peer uses UDP explorer frames to locate the remote peer MAC address prior to establishing the connection.

The "unknown" peer can revert to RFC 1795 if there is no response to the UDP explorer frames.

Instructions: Click on Values and select TCP, UDP, or Unknown. If you select Unknown, use the SNA Fallback Attempts parameter to set the number of connection attempts using UDP explorer frames before reverting to earlier RFCs.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.10

Parameter: Peer Interoperability

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: Enabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Allows Nortel Networks routers to operate with other vendors' routers.

Instructions: Select the default, Enabled, or choose Disabled.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.17

Parameter: Backup Config

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table
Default: No
Options: Yes | No
Function: Enables the parameters that allow you to configure a backup peer.
Instructions: Click on Values and select Yes or No.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.11

Parameter: Backup IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table
Default: 0.0.0.0
Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP address of the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation
Function: Specifies the IP address of a backup DLSw peer and adds the peer to the DLSw backup peer IP table. A backup peer receives all DLSw-related broadcast frames for a given router or network processor if the primary peer router is unavailable or cannot be reached over a TCP connection.
Instructions: Enter the IP address of the backup peer.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.12

Parameter: Backup Peer Type

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table
Default: V20 (Unicast - Unknown)
Options: RFC1795 | V20 (Unicast - TCP) | V20 (Unicast - Unknown) | V20 (Unicast - UDP) | RFC2166 (Multicast)
Function: Specifies the type of DLSw backup peer.
Instructions: Accept the default, V20 (Unicast - Unknown), or select a different option.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.18

Parameter: Backup Max Up Time

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 999999 seconds

Function: Specifies the maximum time (in seconds) that the backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer. When the maximum time is reached, the software terminates the TCP connection if there are no active TCP sessions between the routers. The software overrides the Backup Max Up Time parameter setting only if there is an active (non-idle) TCP connection with data transferring between the routers.

Instructions: Enter a value from 0 to 999999. Specify 0 to disable the Backup Max Up Time parameter.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.13

Parameter: Backup Hold Down Time (sec)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: 120

Options: 0 to 2147483647 seconds

Function: Specifies the time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer. The holddown time ensures that the primary peer has enough time to respond to a TCP connection request before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer.

Instructions: Enter a value from 0 to 2147483647.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.14

Parameter: Backup Start Time (hhmm)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: 1

Options: 0 to 2400

Function: Specifies the start time when a configured backup peer is available. During this time period, the local router can establish a TCP connection with this backup peer if the primary peer is unreachable.

Instructions: Enter the start time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using a 24-hour clock. For example, 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. Enter 0 to disable the Backup Start Time parameter.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.15

Parameter: Backup End Time (hhmm)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table

Default: 1

Options: 1 to 2400

Function: Specifies the end time when a configured backup peer is available. During this time period, the local router can establish a TCP connection with this backup peer if the primary peer is unreachable.

Instructions: Enter the end time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using a 24-hour clock. For example, 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. The Backup End Time parameter is disabled if the Backup Start Time is set to 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.16

DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters

The Edit DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters window (Figure A-11) contains parameters that let you specify RSVP values for an individual peer.

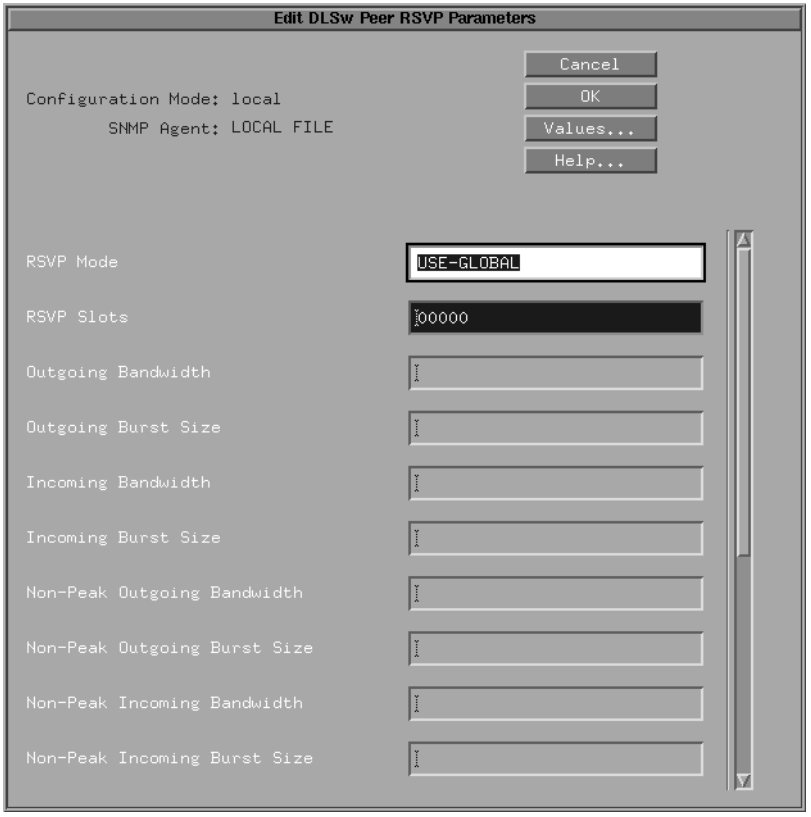

Figure A-11. Edit DLSw Peer RSVP Parameters Window

Parameter: RSVP Mode

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: USE-GLOBAL

Options: USE-PEER, USE-GLOBAL, NO-RSVP-FOR-PEER

Function: Specifies whether you want the selected peer to use RSVP. If you select:

- USE-PEER, you can modify the parameters for the selected peer
- USE-GLOBAL, the peer uses the values that you specified in the DLSw RSVP Global Parameters window
- NO-RSVP-FOR-PEER, the peer does not use RSVP

Instructions: Accept the default, USE-GLOBAL, or click on Values and choose a different option.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.19

Parameter: RSVP Slots

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: All slots on the router

Options: Depends on the number of slots in the router

Function: Specifies the slots that can make RSVP reservations for this peer.

Instructions: Click on the Values button, then select the slots that you want to make RSVP reservations. For example, if you select slots 2 and 3 in a BLN, then the value in the RSVP Slots field appears as 01100.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.20

Parameter: Outgoing Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second

Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.21

Parameter: Outgoing Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes
Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.22

Parameter: Incoming Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second
Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.23

Parameter: Incoming Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes
Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.24

Parameter: Non-Peak Outgoing Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second
Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer during nonpeak hours.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.25

Parameter: Non-Peak Outgoing Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes
Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer during nonpeak hours.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.26

Parameter: Non-Peak Incoming Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second
Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer during nonpeak hours.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.27

Parameter: Non-Peak Incoming Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes

Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for this peer during nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.28

Parameter: Non-Peak Start Time

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2400

Function: Specifies the start time of the nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter the start time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using the 24-hour clock. For example, typing 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. The Non-Peak Start Time parameter is disabled if the Non-Peak Starting Days parameter is set to all 0s.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.29

Parameter: Non-Peak End Time

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2400

Function: Specifies the end time of the nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter the end time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using the 24-hour clock. For example, typing 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. The Non-Peak End Time parameter is disabled if the Non-Peak Starting Days parameter is set to all 0s.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.30

Note: If the Non-Peak Start Time value is greater than the Non-Peak End Time value, the router assumes that the Non-Peak End Time value is after midnight. For example, if you set the start time to 1700 and the end time to 0800, the end time occurs on the following day.

Parameter: Non-Peak Starting Days

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: None (0000000)

Options: SUNDAY, MONDAY, TUESDAY, WEDNESDAY, THURSDAY, FRIDAY, SATURDAY

Function: Specifies the days you want RSVP to use the values set for the Non-Peak Start and End Time and Non-Peak Bandwidth and Burst Size parameters.

Instructions: Click on the Values button, then select the days you want RSVP to be active. For example, if you select SUNDAY and MONDAY, then the value in the Non-Peak Starting Days field appears as 1100000. To disable this parameter and the Non-Peak Start and End Time parameters, enter all 0s.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.31

Parameter: Backup Outgoing Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second

Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for the backup peer.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.32

Parameter: **Backup Outgoing Burst Size**

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes

Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for the backup peer.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.33

Parameter: **Backup Incoming Bandwidth**

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second

Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for the backup peer.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.34

Parameter: **Backup Incoming Burst Size**

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Peer IP Table > DLSw RSVP

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes

Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for the backup peer.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.35

Adding DLSw Slot IP Table Entry Parameters

The DLSw Slot Configuration window (Figure A-12) contains the parameters that let you configure DLSw slot IP table entries. The DLSw slot IP table contains a list of all DLSw-capable slots in your router. Each table entry establishes a slot in the router as a DLSw peer on your TCP/IP network.

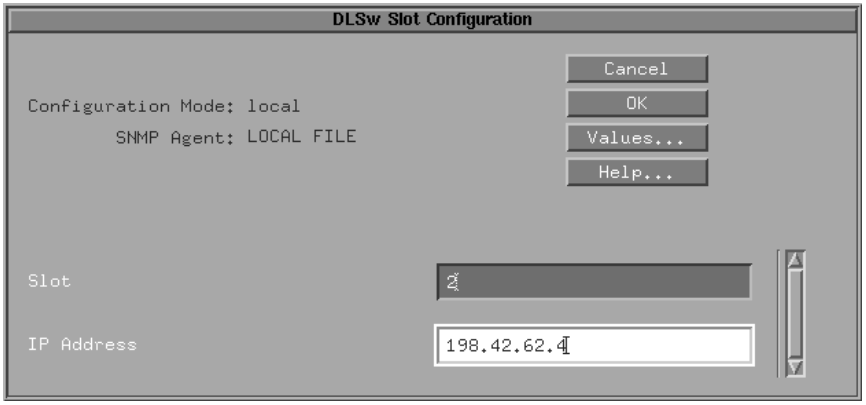

Figure A-12. Add DLSw Slot Configuration Window

Parameter: Slot

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Slot IP Table > Add

Default: None

Options: 1 to 14

Function: Specifies the slot number that you want to associate with the IP interface address that you reserved for that slot.

Instructions: Enter a slot number from 1 to 14, depending on the:

- Type of node/chassis
- Slots that link modules can occupy

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.3.1.2

Parameter: IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Slot IP Table > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation

Function: Specifies an IP address associated with a specific DLSw peer slot in the router. TCP uses this IP address for connections associated with that slot.

Instructions: Enter a valid IP address for the slot. The IP interface does not have to reside on the DLSw-capable slot. Do *not* enter a value for every active slot in the router; enter one IP address associated with one DLSw slot.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.3.1.3

DLSw Slot IP Table Entry Parameter

The DLSw Slot Configuration window (Figure A-13) contains a parameter that lets you change the IP address associated with a specific DLSw peer.

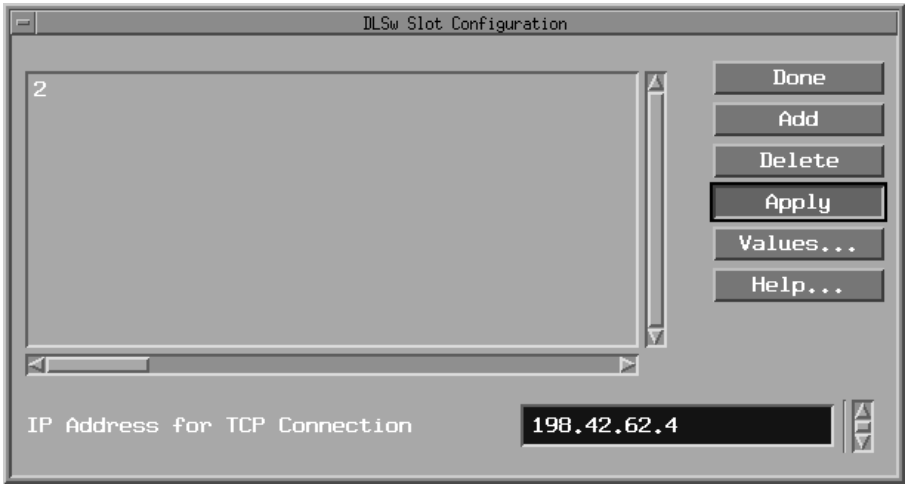

Figure A-13. DLSw Slot Configuration Window

Parameter:	**IP Address for TCP Connection**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Slot IP Table
Default:	None
Options:	Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation
Function:	Specifies an IP address associated with a specific DLSw peer (slot) in the router. TCP uses this IP address for connections associated with that slot.
Instructions:	Enter a valid IP address for each slot. Do *not* enter a value for every active slot in the router; enter only a single IP address associated with a single DLSw slot.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.3.1.3

Adding DLSw SAP Table Entry Parameters

The DLSw SAP Parameter window (Figure A-14) allows you to enter SAP table entries. The DLSw SAP table contains a list of the SAP addresses associated with communication subsystems on PCs, hosts, FEPs, cluster controllers, and other systems in your network.

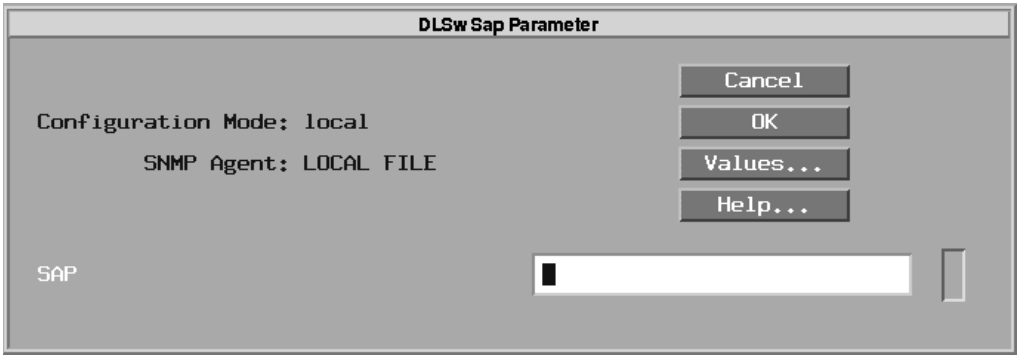

Figure A-14. DLSw SAP Parameter Window

Parameter:	**SAP**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > SAP Table > Add
Default:	None
Options:	A valid, even SAP address (00 to FE) in hexadecimal format
Function:	Specifies the destination SAP address associated with a communication subsystem on a remote device (for example, a PC or host).
Instructions:	Begin the address with 0x and enter the SAP address associated with a specific communication subsystem. For example, the SAP associated with NetBIOS is 0xF0.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.4.1.2

DLSw SAP Table Entry Parameter

The DLSw SAP Configuration window (Figure A-15) allows you to change the SAP window setting for an existing SAP table entry.

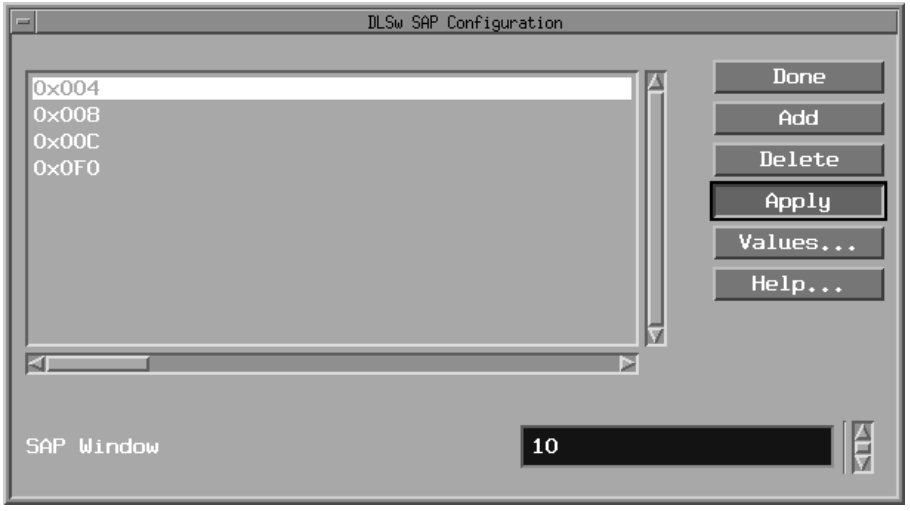

Figure A-15. DLSw SAP Configuration Window

Parameter:	**SAP Window**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > SAP Table
Default:	10
Options:	6 to 200
Function:	Specifies the maximum number of unacknowledged LLC2 frames that the local end station DLSw switch accepts for forwarding to the remote end station. For more information, see “Flow Control” on page 2-12.
Instructions:	Enter a SAP window size that is appropriate for your network configuration and requirements. Specifying a larger size dedicates more buffer space to a particular SAP, thereby improving performance on that SAP. Specifying a smaller size reduces buffer size and decreases performance on that SAP.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.4.1.3

Note: The default value of 10 frames is based on the commonly used value of 7, plus additional frames to accommodate possible differences in timing between the router and the end stations. With large numbers of PUs, you may need to increase this value.

Adding DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry Parameters

The DLSw NetBIOS Configuration window (Figure A-16) contains parameters that allow you to add entries to the DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table. This table lists all remote NetBIOS systems and applications that you can access through DLSw connection services on the local router. Each entry that you define in the default NetBIOS peer IP table associates the name of a NetBIOS client or server with the IP address of the remote DLSw peer that can reach that client or server.

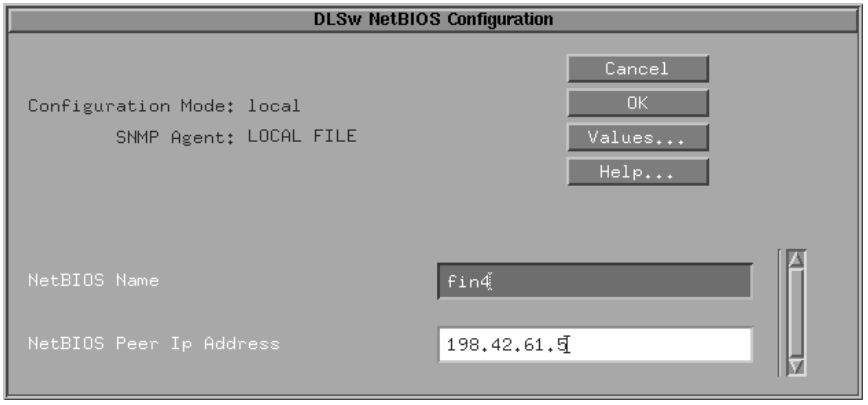

Figure A-16. DLSw NetBIOS Configuration Window

Parameter: NetBIOS Name

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Default NetBIOS > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid NetBIOS name

Function: Specifies the name of the remote NetBIOS client/server or application that you want to reach through DLSw services.

Instructions: Enter the name of the remote NetBIOS client or server station or application that you want to reach through DLSw services.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.11.1.2

Parameter:	**NetBIOS Peer IP Address**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Default NetBIOS > Add
Default:	None
Options:	Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation
Function:	Specifies the IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach the remote NetBIOS client/server or application named in the same DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry.
Instructions:	Enter the IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach the remote client or server station or application named in the same DLSw default NetBIOS peer IP table entry. The router adds this IP address to the list of configured peers in the local DLSw peer IP table.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.11.1.3

DLSw Default NetBIOS Peer IP Table Entry Parameter

The DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration window (Figure A-17) contains a parameter that lets you change the default NetBIOS peer that you associated with a NetBIOS client or server.

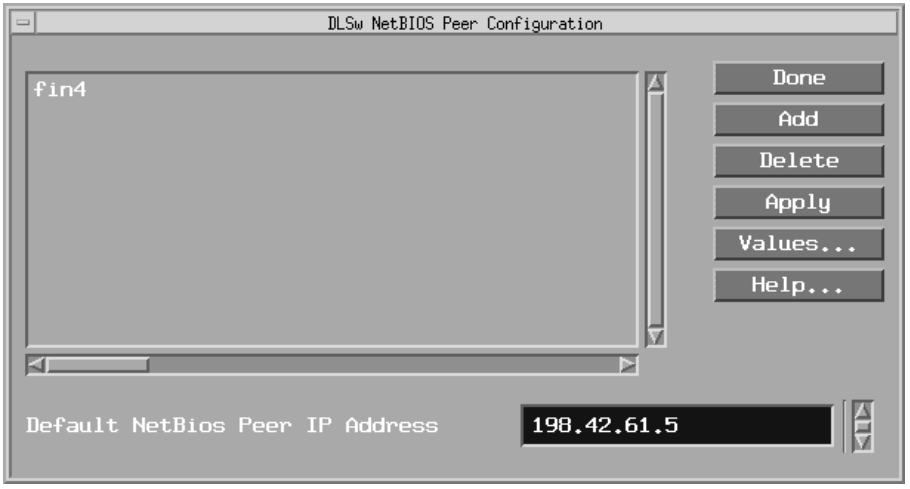

Figure A-17. DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration Window

Parameter:	**Default NetBIOS Peer IP Address**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Default NetBIOS
Default:	None
Options:	Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation
Function:	Specifies the IP address of the remote DLSw peer that can reach the NetBIOS client/server system or application currently selected in the DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration window.
Instructions:	Enter the IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach the remote client/server or application currently selected in the DLSw NetBIOS Peer Configuration window. The router adds this IP address to the list of configured peers in the local DLSw peer IP table.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.11.1.3

Adding DLSw MAC Peer IP Table Entry Parameters

The DLSw MAC Configuration window (Figure A-18) contains parameters that allow you to add entries to the DLSw default MAC peer IP table. The DLSw default MAC peer IP table contains the list of all remote SNA systems and applications that you can access through DLSw connection services on the local router. Each entry you define in the DLSw default MAC peer IP table contains the IP address of a remote DLSw peer that can reach a target SNA system or application. The target system or application has an associated token ring/802.5 MAC address, which you also specify in the DLSw default MAC peer IP table entry.

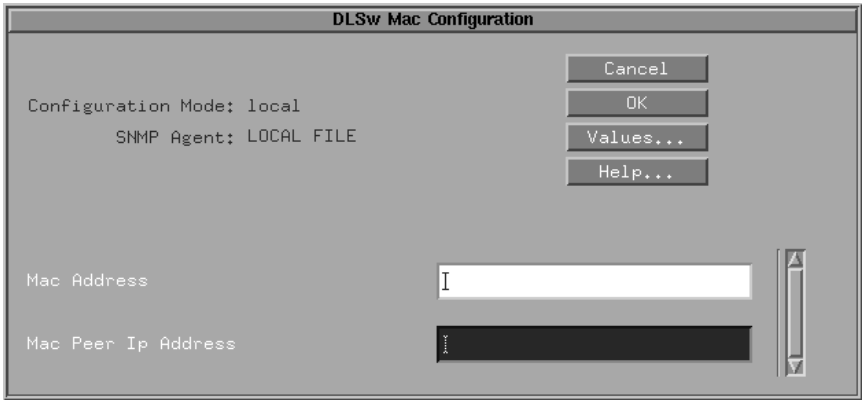

Figure A-18. DLSw MAC Configuration Window

Parameter: MAC Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Default MAC > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid, 48-bit MAC address expressed in hexadecimal notation

Function: Specifies the MAC address associated with the SNA system or application that you want to reach through DLSw services.

Instructions: Enter in hexadecimal format the MAC address associated with the remote SNA system or application that you want to reach through DLSw services.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.10.1.2

Parameter: **MAC Peer IP Address**

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Default MAC > Add

Default: None

Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation

Function: Specifies the IP address of a remote DLSw peer that can reach the remote SNA system or application identified by the MAC address in the same default MAC peer IP table entry. The router adds this IP address to the list of configured peers in the DLSw peer IP table.

Instructions: Enter the IP address of the remote DLSw peer that can reach the remote SNA system or application identified by the MAC address in the same default MAC peer IP table entry.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.10.1.3

Default MAC Peer IP Table Entry Parameter

The DLSw MAC Peer Configuration window (Figure A-19) contains a parameter that allows you to change the remote DLSw peer that can reach a target SNA system or application.

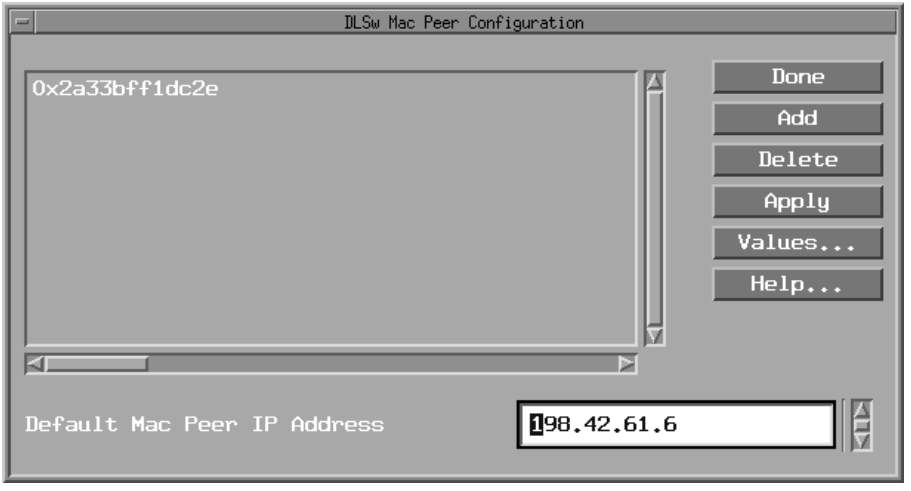

Figure A-19. DLSw MAC Peer Configuration Window

Parameter: Default MAC Peer IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Default MAC

Default: None

Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation

Function: Specifies the IP address of a remote DLSw peer that can reach the SNA system or application identified by the MAC address and currently selected in the DLSw MAC Peer Configuration window. The router adds this IP address to the list of configured peers in the DLSw peer IP table.

Instructions: Enter the IP address of the remote DLSw peer that can reach the remote SNA system or application identified by the MAC address and currently selected in the DLSw MAC Peer Configuration window.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.10.1.3

VCCT Slot Parameter

The VCCT Slot Configuration window (Figure A-20) contains the Slot Number parameter, which allows you to specify the slot for the virtual circuit you created. The slot you choose for the virtual circuit must be the same slot on which DLSw and APPN are running.

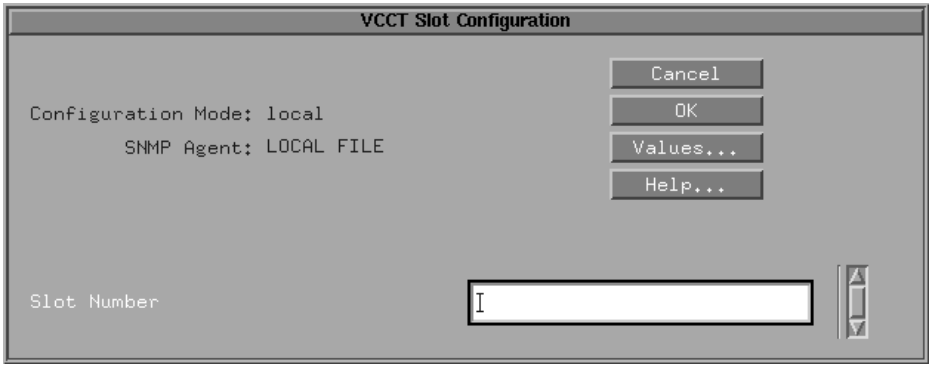

Figure A-20. VCCT Slot Configuration Window

Parameter: Slot Number

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Boundary Function > Add VCCT > Yes

Default: None

Options: 1 to 14

Function: Allows you to specify the slot for the virtual circuit you created. The slot you choose for the virtual circuit must be the same slot on which DLSw and APPN are running.

Instructions: Enter a slot number from 1 to 14, depending on the:

- Type of node/chassis
- Slots that link modules can occupy

MIB Object ID: N/A

VCCT Circuit Configuration Parameter

The VCCT Cct Configuration window (Figure A-21) contains the Circuit Number and the Slot Number parameters, which allow you to choose an existing virtual circuit and specify the slot for that virtual circuit. The slot you choose for the virtual circuit must be the same slot on which DLSw and APPN are running.

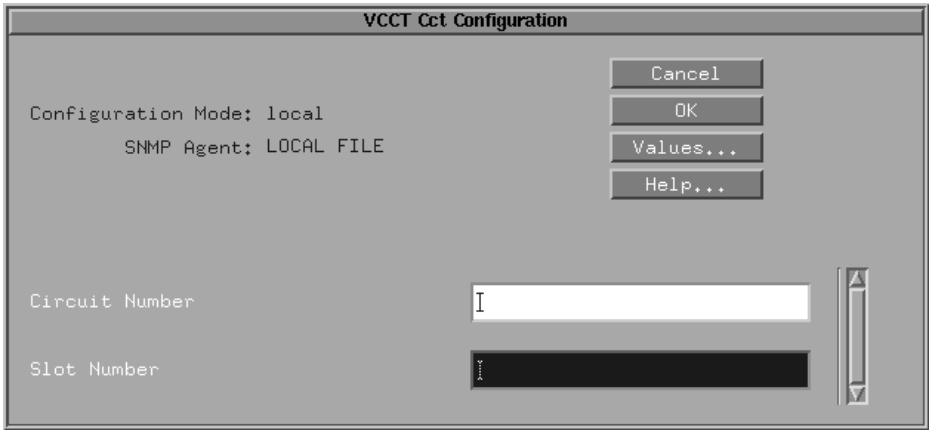

Figure A-21. VCCT Cct Configuration Window

Parameter: Circuit Number

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Boundary Function > Add VCCT > No
Default: None
Options: 1 to 1024
Function: Allows you to specify an existing virtual circuit.
Instructions: Enter a number from 1 to 1024.
MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter: Slot Number

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Boundary Function > Add VCCT > No
Default: None
Options: 1 to 14
Function: Allows you to specify the slot for the virtual circuit you created. The slot you choose for the virtual circuit must be the same slot on which DLSw and APPN are running.
Instructions: Enter a slot number from 1 to 14, depending on the:

- Type of node/chassis
- Slots that link modules can occupy

MIB Object ID: N/A

Enabling VCCT Global Parameter

The Edit VCCT Global Parameters window (Figure A-22) contains the Enable parameter, which allows you to enable or disable all virtual circuits.

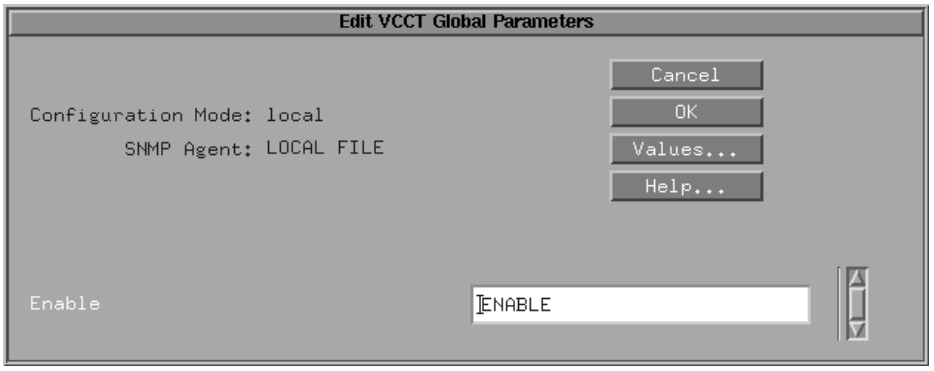

Figure A-22. Edit VCCT Global Parameters Window

Parameter: Enable

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Boundary Function > Global
Default: Enable
Options: Enable | Disable
Function: Allows you to enable or disable all virtual circuits on the router.
Instructions: Accept the default, Enable, or select Disable.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.24.1.2

Enabling VCCT Interface Parameter

The VCCT circuits window (Figure A-23) contains the Enable parameter, which allows you to enable or disable a selected virtual circuit.

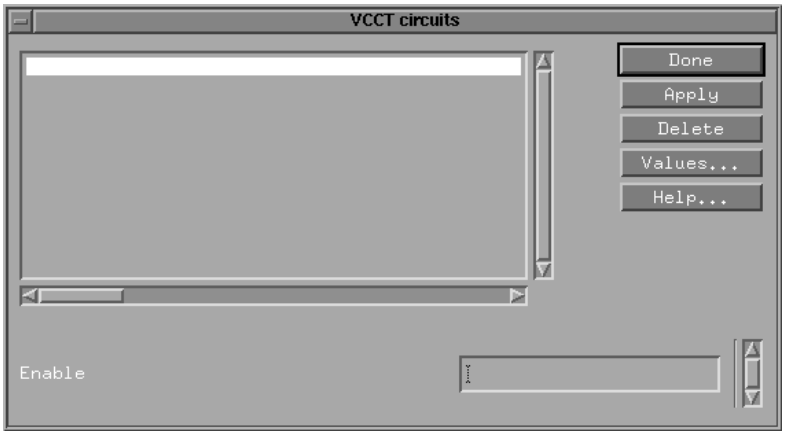

Figure A-23. VCCT Circuits Window

Parameter: Enable

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Boundary Function > Interfaces
Default: Enable
Options: Enable | Disable
Function: Allows you to enable or disable a selected virtual circuit on the router.
Instructions: Accept the default, Enable, or select Disable.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.24.2.1.2

Adding DLSw Multicast Parameters

The DLSw Multicast Configuration window (Figure A-24) contains parameters that allow you to add IP multicasting to a specified slot.

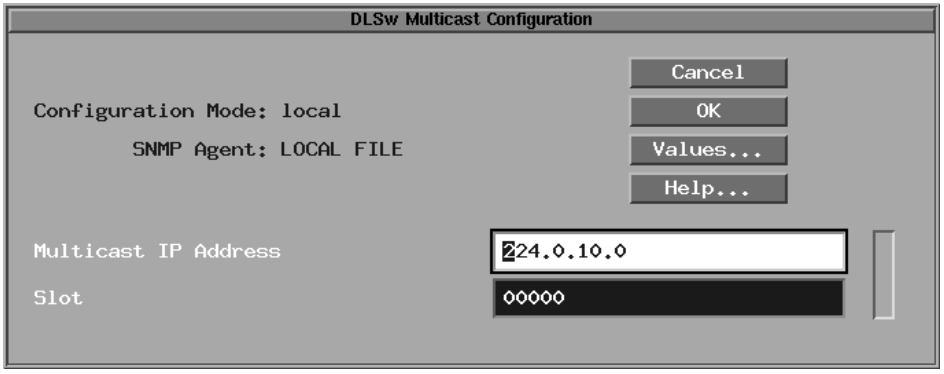

Figure A-24. Add DLSw Multicast Configuration Window

Parameter: Multicast IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table > Add

Default: 224.0.10.0

Options: Any valid IP address specified in dotted-decimal notation. The valid range is 224.0.1.0 to 239.255.255.255.

Function: Specifies the multicast IP address of this entry.

Instructions: Enter the appropriate IP address.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.3

Parameter: Slot

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table > Add

Default: Depends on the number of slots in the router. For a BLN, the default is 00000.

Options: Depends on the number of slots in the router

Function: Specifies the slots that you want to receive and transmit multicast data.

Instructions: Click on the Values button. Select the slots that you want to receive and transmit multicast data. For example, if you select slots 2 and 3 in a BLN, then the value in the Slot field appears as 01100.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.4

DLSw Multicast and Backup Peer Parameters

The DLSw Multicast Configuration window (Figure A-25) contains parameters that allow you to add or remove the slots that you want to receive and transmit multicast data and configure DLSw backup peers for an RFC 2166 multicast peer.

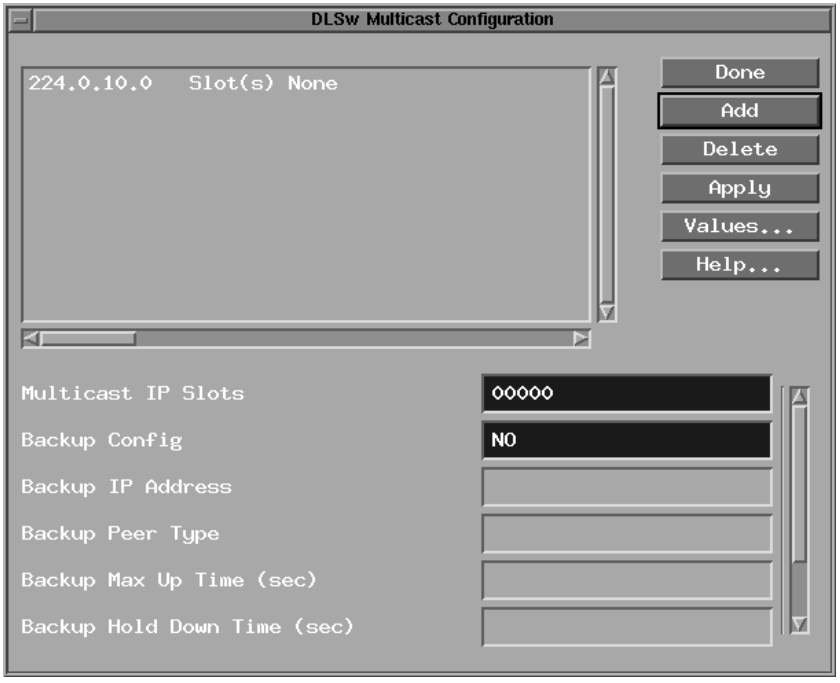

Figure A-25. DLSw Multicast Configuration Window

Parameter: Multicast IP Slots

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table
Default: The value or values you selected for the Slot parameter
Options: Depends on the number of slots in the router
Function: Specifies the slots that you want to receive and transmit multicast data.
Instructions: Accept the value you entered at the Slot parameter on the second DLSw Multicast Configuration window, or click on the Values button and select different slots.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.4

Parameter: Backup Config

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table
Default: No
Options: Yes | No
Function: Enables the parameters that allow you to configure a backup peer.
Instructions: Accept the default, No, or click on the Values button and select Yes.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.5

Parameter: Backup IP Address

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table
Default: 0.0.0.0
Options: Any valid, 32-bit IP address in the form *network.host* in dotted-decimal notation
Function: Specifies the IP address of a backup DLSw peer and adds the peer to the DLSw backup peer IP table. A backup peer receives all DLSw-related broadcast frames for a given router or network processor if the primary peer router is unavailable or cannot be reached over a TCP connection.
Instructions: Enter the IP address of the backup peer.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.6

Parameter: Backup Peer Type

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table

Default: V20 (Unicast-Unknown)

Options: RFC 1795 | V20 (Unicast-TCP) | V20 (Unicast-Unknown) | V20 (Unicast-UDP) | RFC 2166 (Multicast)

Function: Specifies the type of this DLSw backup peer.

Instructions: Accept the default, V20 (Unicast-Unknown), or click on the Values button and specify a different type.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.11

Parameter: Backup Max Up Time (sec)

Path: Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 999999 seconds

Function: Specifies the maximum time (in seconds) that the backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer. When the maximum time is reached, the software terminates the TCP connection if there are no active TCP sessions between the routers. The software overrides the Backup Max Up Time parameter setting only if there is an active (non-idle) TCP connection with data transferring between the routers.

Instructions: Enter a value from 0 to 999999. Specify 0 to disable the Backup Max Up Time parameter.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.7

Parameter: Backup Hold Down Time (sec)

Path:	Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table
Default:	120
Options:	0 to 2147483647 seconds
Function:	Specifies the time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer. The hold down time ensures that the primary peer has enough time to respond to a TCP connection request before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer.
Instructions:	Accept the default, 120, or click on the Values button and specify a different value.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.8

Parameter: Backup Start Time (hhmm)

Path:	Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table
Default:	1
Options:	0 to 2400
Function:	Specifies the start time when a configured backup peer is available. During this time period, the local router can establish a TCP connection with this backup peer if the primary peer is unreachable.
Instructions:	Enter the start time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using the 24-hour clock. For example, 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. Enter 0 to disable the Backup Start Time parameter.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.9

Parameter:	**Backup End Time (hhmm)**
Path:	Configuration Manager > DLSw > Multicast IP Table > Multicast IP Table
Default:	2400
Options:	1 to 2400
Function:	Specifies the end time when a configured backup peer is available. During this time period, the local router can establish a TCP connection with this backup peer if the primary peer is unreachable.
Instructions:	Enter the end time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using the 24-hour clock. For example, 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. The Backup End Time parameter is disabled if the Backup Start Time is set to 0.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.15.1.10

DLSw RSVP Global Parameters

The Edit DLSw RSVP Global Parameters window (Figure A-26) contains parameters that let you specify default RSVP values for all peers.

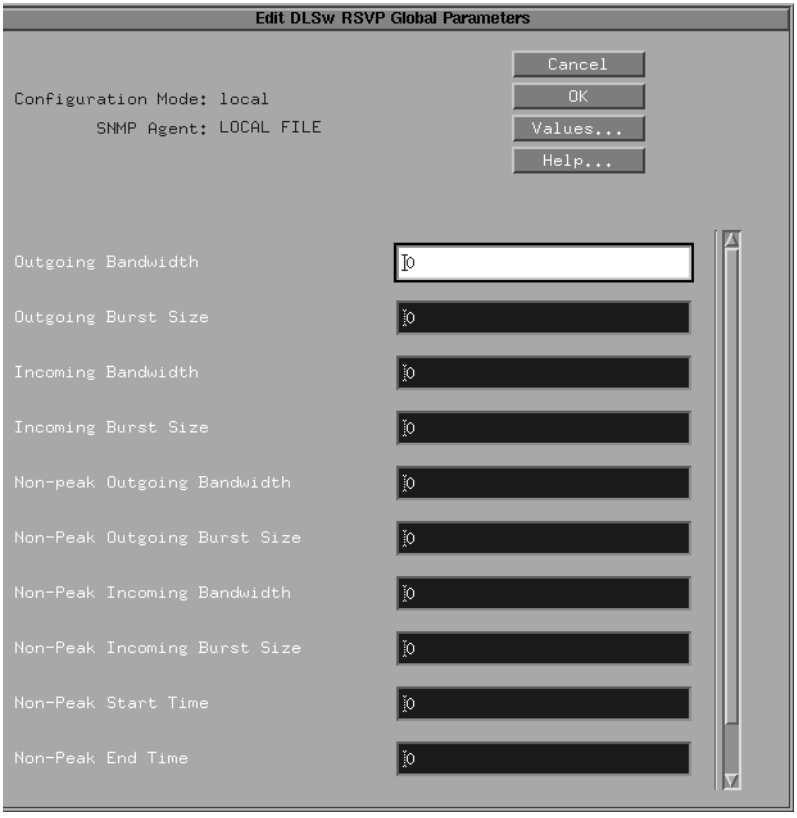

Figure A-26. Edit DLSw RSVP Global Parameters Window

Parameter: Outgoing Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second
Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.38

Parameter: Outgoing Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes
Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.39

Parameter: Incoming Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second
Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.40

Parameter: Incoming Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes
Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.41

Parameter: Non-Peak Outgoing Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second
Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters during nonpeak hours.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.42

Parameter: Non-Peak Outgoing Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global
Default: 0
Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes
Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the outgoing DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters during nonpeak hours.
Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.
MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.43

Parameter: Non-Peak Incoming Bandwidth

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bits per second

Function: Specifies the bandwidth amount (in bits per second) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters during nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.44

Parameter: Non-Peak Incoming Burst Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2147483647 bytes

Function: Specifies the burst size amount (in bytes) for the incoming DLSw traffic to use in RSVP reservations for unconfigured peers or peers that will use global parameters during nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter a value from 1 to 2147483647, or accept the default value of 0.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.45

Parameter: Non-Peak Start Time

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2400

Function: Specifies the start time of the nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter the start time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using the 24-hour clock. For example, typing 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. The Non-Peak Start Time parameter is disabled if the Non-Peak Starting Days parameter is set to all 0s.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.46

Parameter: Non-Peak End Time

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 2400

Function: Specifies the end time of the nonpeak hours.

Instructions: Enter the end time in *hhmm* format, where *hh* is hours and *mm* is minutes, using the 24-hour clock. For example, typing 0820 specifies 8:20 a.m., and 2400 specifies 12:00 midnight. The Non-Peak End Time parameter is disabled if the Non-Peak Starting Days parameter is set to all 0s.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.47

Note: If the Non-Peak Start Time value is greater than the Non-Peak End Time value, the router assumes that the Non-Peak End Time value is after midnight. For example, if you set the start time to 1700 and the end time to 0800, the end time occurs on the following day.

Parameter: Non-Peak Starting Days

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > DLSw RSVP Global

Default: None (0000000)

Options: SUNDAY, MONDAY, TUESDAY, WEDNESDAY, THURSDAY, FRIDAY, SATURDAY

Function: Specifies the days on which you want RSVP to use the values set for the Non-Peak Start and End Time and Non-Peak Bandwidth and Burst Size parameters.

Instructions: Click on the Values button. Select the days you want RSVP to be active. For example, if you select SUNDAY and MONDAY, then the value in the Non-Peak Starting Days field appears as 1100000. To disable this parameter and the Non-Peak Start and End Time parameters, enter all 0s.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.48

Adding MAC Address Translation Parameters

The DLSw MAC Address Translation window (Figure A-27) allows you to specify the original destination MAC address and the translated destination MAC address.

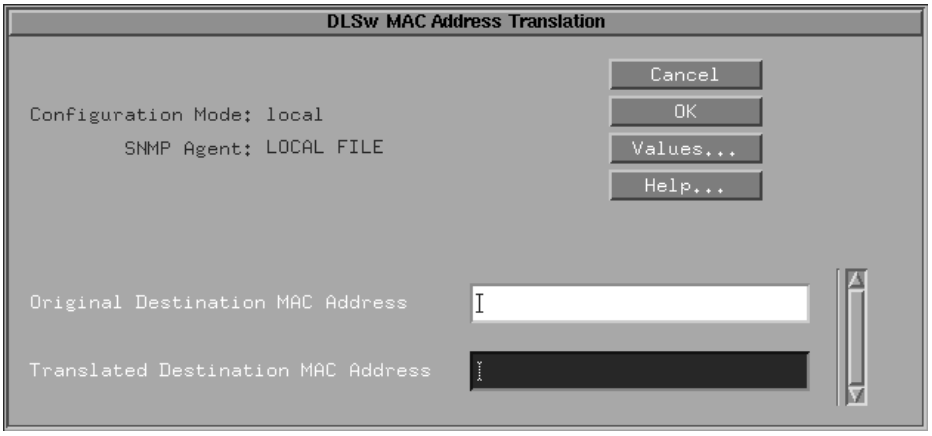

Figure A-27. DLSw MAC Address Translation Window

Parameter: Original Destination MAC Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > MAC Address Translation Table > Add

Default: None

Options: Standard MSB Token Ring MAC addresses

Function: Specifies the originally configured MAC address of the destination station.

Instructions: Enter the MAC address of the destination station.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.16.1.2

Parameter: Translated Destination MAC Address

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > MAC Address Translation Table > Add

Default: None

Options: Standard MSB Token Ring MAC addresses

Function: Specifies the translated MAC address of the destination station.

Instructions: Enter the MAC address to which you want the original MAC address translated.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.16.1.3

DLSw MAC Address Translation Table

The DLSw MAC Address Translation Table window (Figure A-28) allows you to edit the translated destination MAC address for the original MAC address you select.

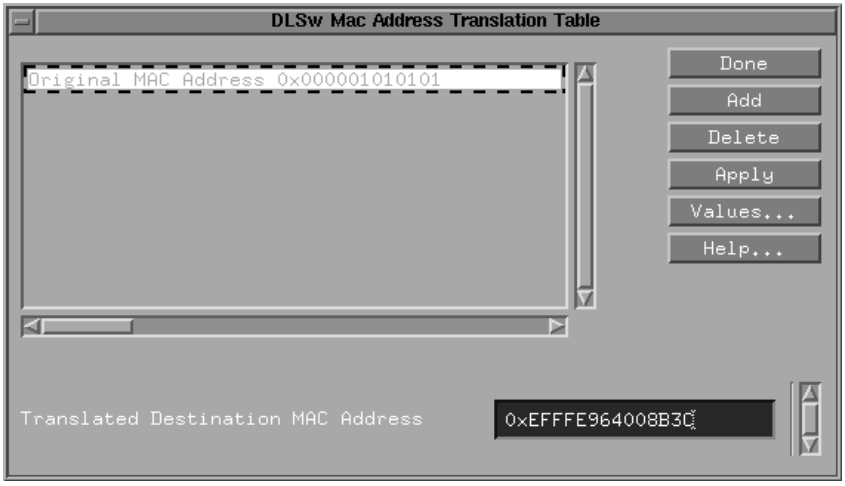

Figure A-28. DLSw MAC Address Translation Table Window

Parameter:	**Translated Destination MAC Address**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > MAC Address Translation Table
Default:	None
Options:	Standard MSB Token Ring MAC addresses
Function:	Specifies the translated MAC address of the destination station.
Instructions:	Enter the MAC address to which you want the original MAC address translated.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.16.1.3

Global DLSw Protocol Priority Parameters

The Global DLSw PP Parameters/Defaults window (Figure A-29) contains parameters that let you enable default queues for configured and unconfigured peers, and customize the values that control how priority queues work.

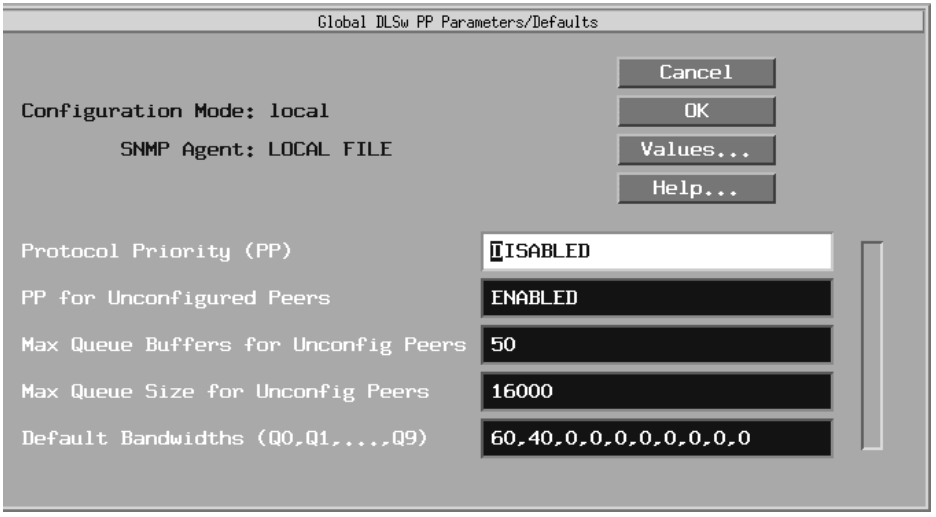

Figure A-29. Global DLSw PP Parameters/Defaults Window

Parameter: Protocol Priority (PP)

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Global

Default: Disabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Toggles protocol prioritization on and off for configured DLSw peers. The default (Disabled) disables all default priority queues. Accepting the default is useful if you want to temporarily disable protocol prioritization for configured peers.

Instructions: Set to Enabled to turn protocol prioritization on. Accept the default, Disabled, if you want to temporarily disable all protocol prioritization activity.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.17

Note: Once you enable a peer-specific priority queue using the Peer Queue Configuration window (Figure A-30 on page A-90), you must use that window to disable that peer's queues. You cannot disable queues that are already active from the Global DLSw PP Parameters/Defaults window.

Parameter: PP for Unconfigured Peers

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Global

Default: Disabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Toggles protocol prioritization for unconfigured DLSw peers on and off. The default (Disabled) disables all unconfigured priority queues. Accepting the default is useful if you want to temporarily disable protocol prioritization for unconfigured peers.

Instructions: Set to Enabled to turn protocol prioritization on. Accept the default, Disabled, if you want to temporarily disable all protocol prioritization activity.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.20

Parameter: Max Queue Buffers for Unconfig Peers

Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Global
Default:	50
Options:	10 to 2147483647 bytes
Function:	Specifies the maximum number of packets in each default queue.
Instructions:	Enter a number of packets to increase or decrease the default buffer size of 50 packets.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.21

Parameter: Max Queue Size for Unconfig Peers

Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Global
Default:	16000
Options:	5000 to 2147483647 bytes
Function:	Specifies the maximum size (in bytes) of each default queue.
Instructions:	Enter a number of bytes to increase or decrease the default queue size of 16000 bytes.
MIB Object ID:	1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.22

Parameter: Default Bandwidths

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Global

Default: 60, 40, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0

Options: Ten entries (one per queue) of a percentage between 0 and 100

Function: Determines the number of default queues and allocates the bandwidth for each.

Instructions: Either accept the default of 60 percent in Q0 and 40 percent in Q1, or enter up to 10 values (one for each queue). Separate each bandwidth percent with a comma. The bandwidth percentages must total 100 percent.

On low-speed lines running NetBIOS, you should allocate 20 percent of the total bandwidth due to end-station timing.

For example, the following allots 10 percent of the bandwidth to each of 10 queues:

10, 10, 10, 10, 10, 10, 10, 10, 10, 10

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.1.19

Peer Queue Configuration Parameters

The Peer Queue Configuration window (Figure A-30) summarizes the priority queue status for all DLSw peers. The scroll box lists each peer and indicates whether it uses the default or a specific queue configuration. (All of the DLSw peers in Figure A-30 use the default queue configuration.)

The parameters in this window let you specify protocol prioritization (Disabled or Enabled) and queue information (queue buffers and size) for the selected peer.

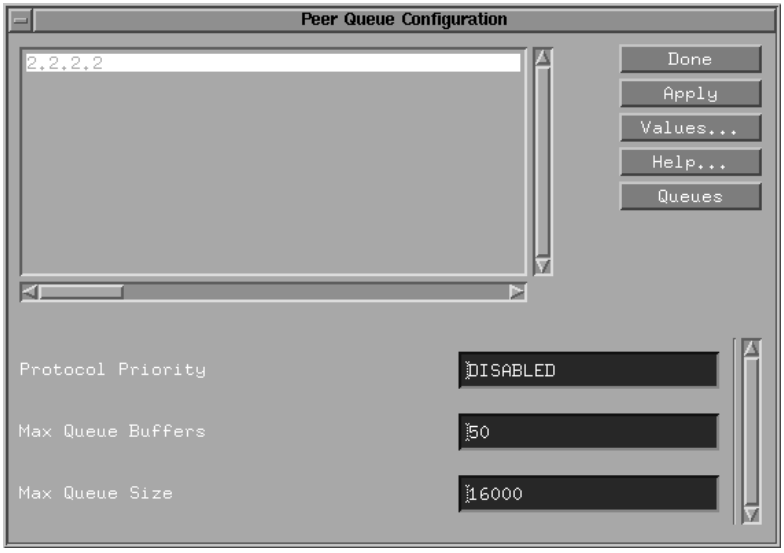

Figure A-30. Peer Queue Configuration Window

Parameter: Protocol Priority

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Peer Queue Entries

Default: Disabled

Options: Enabled | Disabled

Function: Toggles protocol prioritization on and off for this peer. The default disables all priority filters on this peer. Accepting the default is useful if you want to temporarily disable protocol priority but leave the outbound filters in place.

Instructions: Set to Enabled if you want to turn protocol prioritization on. Accept the default, Disabled, if you want to temporarily disable all protocol prioritization activity on this peer.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.5

Parameter: Max Queue Buffers

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Peer Queue Entries

Default: 50

Options: 10 to 2147483647

Function: Specifies the maximum number of packets in each of this peer's queues.

Instructions: Enter a number of packets to increase or decrease the default buffer size of 50 packets.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.6

Parameter: Max Queue Size

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Peer Queue Entries

Default: 16000

Options: 5000 to 2147483647 bytes

Function: Specifies the maximum size of each of this peer's queues.

Instructions: Enter a number of bytes to increase or decrease the default queue size of 16000 bytes.

MIB Object ID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.18.3.5.1.5.5.1.7

Adding Queue Parameters

The Add Queue window (Figure A-31) contains two parameters that let you specify a queue number and a queue bandwidth for a configured DLSw peer.

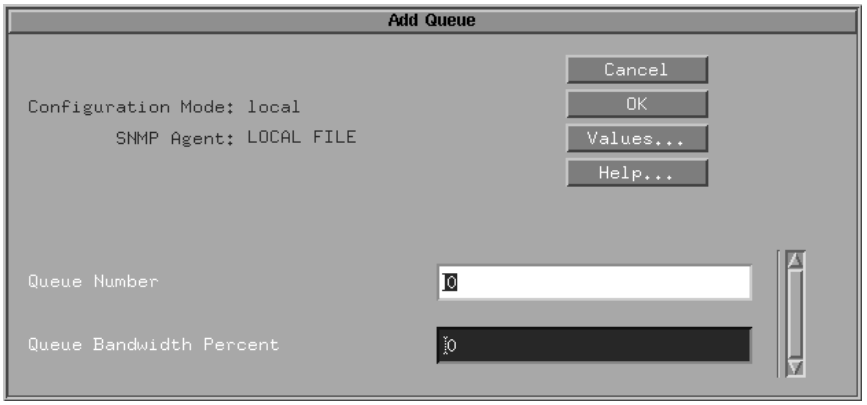

Figure A-31. Add Queue Window

Parameter: Queue Number

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Peer Queue Entries > **Queues** > Add

Default: 0

Options: 0 to 9

Function: Specifies the protocol priority queue number for a configured DLSw peer.

Instructions: The first queue must be queue 0. You can number additional queues from 1 to 9. You do not need to number them in sequence, although doing so may help you keep track of the queues on a peer.

MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter:	**Queue Bandwidth Percent**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > Peer Queue Entries > **Queues** > Add
Default:	10
Options:	0 to 100
Function:	Specifies a bandwidth percentage that you allocate to a protocol priority queue for a configured DLSw peer.
Instructions:	The bandwidth for queue number zero must be greater than 0. You can assign any percentage between 0 and 99 to subsequent queues, as long as the combined bandwidth for all queues totals 100 percent. On low speeds running NetBIOS, allocate 20 percent of the total bandwidth due to end-station timing.
MIB Object ID:	N/A

DLS Priority Filters Parameters

The DLS Priority/Outbound Filters window (Figure A-32) shows the existing outbound traffic filters for DLSw peers, regardless of whether the filters are currently active on the peers. Each entry in the filter scroll box lists the filter number, filter name, and IP address of the affected DLSw peer. Filters that apply to all DLSw peers have IP address 0.0.0.0. Site Manager numbers the filters for each peer interface chronologically. The parameters in this window let you configure and name outbound traffic filters.

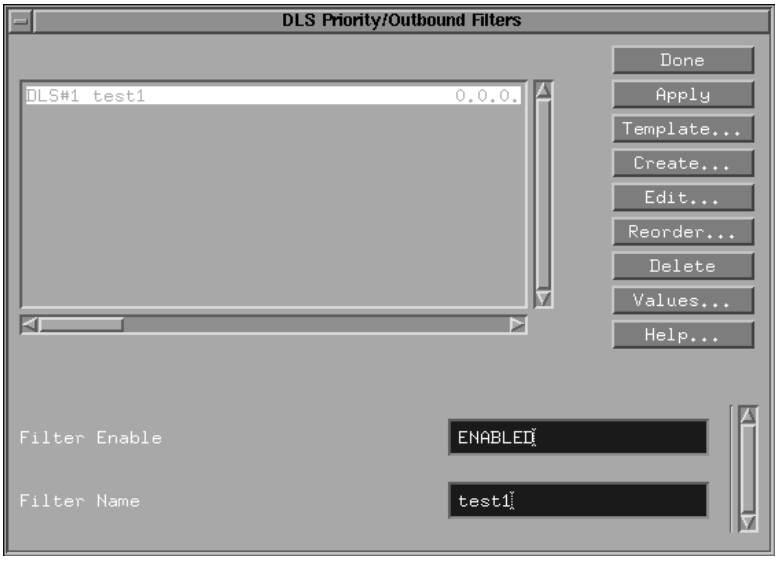

Figure A-32. DLS Priority/Outbound Filters Window

Parameter: Filter Enable

Path: Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > PP Traffic Filters

Default: None

Options: Enable | Disable

Function: Indicates whether the traffic filter is enabled or disabled.

Instructions: Select Enable to enable the traffic filter. Select Disable to disable the traffic filter.

MIB Object ID: N/A

Parameter:	**Filter Name**
Path:	Configuration Manager > Protocols > DLSw > Prot Prioritization (Outbound) > PP Traffic Filters
Default:	None
Options:	1 to 30 alphanumeric characters
Function:	Indicates the filter to which you want to apply a template for a specific interface.
Instructions:	Enter the name you want for the filter. The name can be 1 to 30 alphanumeric characters.
MIB Object ID:	N/A

Appendix B
Criteria for DLSw Prioritization

This appendix includes both the DLSw *predefined* criteria that Site Manager's Configuration Manager provides and the supported DLSw reference points for *user-defined* criteria for DLSw prioritization, described in Chapter 4, "Customizing DLSw Services."

Topic	Page
Predefined DLSw Criteria	B-2
DLSw Reference Points	B-3
Specifying MAC Address Ranges	B-4
Specifying Source and Destination SAP Code Ranges	B-6

Predefined DLSw Criteria

You configure outbound filters for DLSw traffic from predefined criteria based on the DLSw header (Table B-1).

Table B-1. Predefined Outbound Filter Criteria Based on DLSw Header

Packet Type or Component	Predefined Criteria
Any	MAC Source Address* MAC Destination Address* DSAP† SSAP†
FID4	FID Type Network Priority Trans Priority Destination Subarea Address Origin Subarea Address Expedited Flow Indicator Destination Element Origin Element User-Defined
FID2	FID Type EFI (Expedited Flow Indicator) Destination Element DAF (Destination Address Field) OAF (Origin Address Field) User-Defined

* See "Specifying MAC Address Ranges" on page B-4.

† See "Specifying Source and Destination SAP Code Ranges" on page B-6.

DLSw Reference Points

Tables B-2 and B-3 list the predefined DLSw reference points for outbound traffic filters based on the SNA transmission header.

Table B-2. DLSw Reference Points for FID2 Frames

Criteria (FID2)	Reference Point	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)
Format Identifier (FID)	SNA_START	0	4
Expedited Flow Indicator (EFI)	SNA_START	7	1
Destination Address Field (DAF)	SNA_START	16	8
Origin Address Field (OAF)	SNA_START	24	8

Table B-3. DLSw Reference Points for FID4 Frames

Criteria (FID4)	Reference Point	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)
Format Identifier (FID)	SNA_START	0	4
Network Priority (NP)	SNA_START	7	1
Transmission Priority Field (TPF)	SNA_START	30	2
Destination Subarea Address Field (DSAF)	SNA_START	64	32
Origin Subarea Address Field (OSAF)	SNA_START	96	32
Expedited Flow Indicator (EFI)	SNA_START	135	1
Destination Element Field (DEF)	SNA_START	144	16
Origin Element Field (OEF)	SNA_START	160	16

Specifying MAC Address Ranges

When you create a filter that includes a source or destination MAC address criterion, you specify the MAC address range in either most significant bit (MSB) or canonical format. Table B-4 lists the address formats to use.

Table B-4. Format for Specifying Source Routing MAC Addresses

Address Type	Address Format
PPP	MSB
Nortel Networks Standard Frame Relay	Canonical
Nortel Networks Proprietary Frame Relay	Canonical
Token Ring	MSB
Ethernet	Canonical

When defining outbound traffic filters, you can specify a MAC address in either MSB or canonical format, but the default is canonical.

Source Routing Bridge Source MAC Addresses

When specifying source routing MAC addresses, set the MSB to 1.

For example, on token ring packets, the source MAC address to be filtered is 0x40000037450440. Then:

1. Add the first bit set MAC address 0x800000000000.
2. Enter the filter criteria range as 0xC00037450440.

Bit 0 (the 0x80 bit) of byte 0 (the left-most byte) indicates the presence of the routing information field (RIF). This bit is set to 1 if the RIF field is present and to 0 if there is no RIF field. Keep this in mind if you use a sniffer to analyze packets for their source MAC address. For example, a sniffer would decode the locally administered address (LAA) with the first byte of 40 as 0x400031740001. If the RIF bit is set, the hexadecimal value of the packet is 0xC00031740001.

Source Routing Bridge Functional MAC Addresses

Functional MAC addresses are destination MAC addresses that always conform to the following rules:

- Byte 0 = 0xC0
- Byte 1 = 0x00
- The first half of byte 2 = 0x0 to 0x7

Table B-5 lists some common functional MAC addresses.

Table B-5. Functional MAC Addresses

Function Name	MAC Address (MSB)	Identifying Bit	Ethernet Address
Active Monitor	0xC000 0000 0001	Byte 5, bit 7	0x030000000080
Ring Parameter Server	0xC000 0000 0002	Byte 5, bit 6	0x030000000040
Ring Error Monitor	0xC000 0000 0008	Byte 5, bit 4	0x030000000010
Configuration Report Server	0xC000 0000 0010	Byte 5, bit 3	0x030000000008
NetBIOS	0xC000 0000 0080	Byte 5, bit 0	0x030000000001
Bridge	0xC000 0000 0100	Byte 4, bit 7	0x030000008000
LAN Manager	0xC000 0000 2000	Byte 4, bit 2	0x030000000400
User-Defined	0xC000 0008 0000 to 0xC000 4000 0000	Byte 3, bits 0 - 4; Byte 2, bits 1 - 7	0x030000100000 to 0x030002000000

Specifying Source and Destination SAP Code Ranges

Table B-6 lists several SAP codes to use when specifying a range for source or destination SAP traffic filter criteria.

Table B-6. SAP Codes

Description	SAP Code
XID or TEST	00
Individual Sublayer Mgmt	02
Group Sublayer Mgmt	03
SNA	04, 08, 0C
IP	06
Proway Network Mgmt	0E
Novell and SDLC Link Servers	10
CLNP ISO OSI	20, 34
BPDU	42
X.25 over 802.2 LLC2	7E
XNS	80
Nestar	86
Active station list	8E
ARP	98
SNAP Subnet Access Protocol	AA
Banyan VIP	BC
Novell IPX	E0
CLNP ISO OSI	EC
IBM NetBIOS	F0
LAN Manager	F4, F5
Remote Program load	F8
UB	FA
IBM RPL	FC
ISO Network Layer	FE
LLC broadcast	FF

Appendix C
Troubleshooting DLSw Networks

This appendix provides the following information about diagnosing and troubleshooting DLSw networks:

Topic	Page
Viewing the DLSw Log	C-2
Enabling Extended Logging	C-2
Using and Decoding the DLSw Log	C-5
DLSw Session Setup	C-8
Establishing DLSw/LLC Connections	C-9
Reviewing the Network Log	C-11
Establishing DLSw/SDLC Connections	C-12
Reviewing the Network Connection Sequence	C-14
Disconnecting from the Network	C-15
Troubleshooting DLSw	C-16
Verifying the WAN Cabling	C-31
Flowcharts	C-33

This appendix is for network administrators who understand SNA and DLSw. Because DLSw operation involves the complex interaction of multiple subsystems, administrators should also be familiar with SDLC, TCP, and LLC.

Viewing the DLSw Log

You view the log file containing Nortel Networks event and debug messages using the Nortel Networks network management software (Site Manager), the Nortel Networks command line interface (Technician Interface), the Bay Command Console (BCC), or compatible third-party network management software.

For information about viewing events and messages using Site Manager or a compatible third-party network management software, see *Configuring and Managing Routers with Site Manager.*

For a complete description of all warning, fault, trace, and informational messages, refer to *Event Messages for Routers*.

For information on viewing events using the Technician Interface, see *Using Technician Interface Software*.

Enabling Extended Logging

Subsystems such as LLC and SDLC allow you to enable extended logging through the MIB. Extended logging provides additional messages and information that can help you identify and troubleshoot a DLSw network problem. However, using extended logging causes the router to use more log space and memory, and affects CPU performance. You enable extended logging using the Nortel Networks Technician Interface.

Table C-1 lists each subsystem, the Technician Interface command that enables extended logging for that subsystem, and types of messages or events that could appear in the log.

Table C-1. Extended Logging Commands for Subsystems

Subsystem	How to Enable	Items Logged
DLS	s wfDls.14.0 0xffffffff;commit* s wfDls.15.0 0x3;commit†	DLSw protocol and data link control events leading to connection state changes
LLC	s wfLlcInterfaceEntry.2.cct 0xff1;commit	LLC inbound and outbound packets
SDLC	s wfSdlcPortAdminEntry.36.cct 0x1;commit	SDLC messages

* Enabled by default.

† DLS, LLC, and SDLC extended logging set by Technician Interface only.

With extended logging enabled, log messages describing the frame flows and state transitions appear during the critical phases of each connection being established.

Table C-2 shows more detailed information about the enabling bits shown in Table C-1.

Table C-2. Log Messages

Debug Flag Description	BCC Value	Enabling Bits	Enable Value (in Hex)
General Control and SSP Events	general	1 and 2	0x00000003
SDLC Events	sdlc-events-1	3	0x00000004
1795 Peer and Capx/1434 Flow Control	rfc1795	4	0x00000008
SDLC Events	sdlc-events-2	5	0x00000010
V2.0 Peer and Capx Events	V2.0-events	6	0x00000020
Backup Peer Events	backup-peer	7	0x00000040
Test Table Lookup Results	test-tbl-lookup	29	0x10000000
SDLC and XID Information	sdlc info	31	0x40000000
SDLC LS Reference and DLS/ TCP Protocol Priority	sdlc ls ref	32	0x80000000
DLS RFC 2166 Events	multicast	8	0x00000100
QLLC and VCCT Events	qllc-vcct	9	0x00000200
No Bits	none	0	0x0
All Debug Flags	all	all bits	0xffffffff

Using and Decoding the DLSw Log

This section provides general information about DLSw states and events, as described in RFC 1434 and RFC 1795. DLSw states and events appear as numbers within the text of logged messages.

If a message contains the text “old state = 3, new state = 1,” the numbers 3 and 1 point to specific conditions in the DLSw state table. Similarly, a message containing the text “event= 3,” points to a specific condition in the DLSw event table.

Table C-3 lists the DLSw state names and numbers. Table C-4 lists the DLSw events and numbers. Refer to these tables when decoding messages in the DLSw log.

Table C-3. DLSw State Table

State Name	State Number
CONNECTED	1
CONNECT PENDING	2
CONTACT PENDING	3
CIRCUIT ESTABLISHED	4
CIRCUIT PENDING	5
CIRCUIT RESTART	6
HALT PENDING	7
DISCONNECTED	11
DISCONNECT PENDING	12
RESTART PENDING	13
RESOLVE PENDING	14
CIRCUIT START	15
HALT PENDING NO ACK	16

Table C-4. DLSw Event Table

Event	Event Number (in decimal format)
CANUREACH Received	3
ICANREACH Received	4
REACH_ACK Received	5
XIDFRAME Received	7
CONTACT Received	8
CONTACTED Received	9
INFOFRAME Received	10
HALT_DL Received	14
DL_HALTED Received	15
RESTART_DL Received	16
DL_RESTARTED Received	17
NETBIOS_NQ/NETBIOS_NQ_ex/ NETBIOS_NQ_cs Received	18
NETBIOS_NR/NETBIOS_NR_ex/ NETBIOS_NR_cs Received	19
DATAFRAME Received	20
HALT_DL_NOACK Received	25
NETBIOS_ANQ Received	26
NETBIOS_ANR Received	27
KEEPALIVE Received	29
CAP_EXCHANGE Received	32
IFCM Received	33
TEST_CIRCUIT_REQ Received	122
TEST_CIRCUIT_RSP Received	123

Sample Log Entries

This section describes some common sample DLSw event entries that may appear in the log file. The event code in the Nortel Networks log is an internal number that identifies the specific message. A description follows each message.

Event Code 16

```
#  15: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in connect_conf, conn = 30927f70, oldstate = 4, new
state = 3
```

This message describes major state changes:

connect_conf -- The routine processing the frame. It is probably a name corresponding to the type of event causing the state change.

conn = 30927f70 -- The unique connection identifier

old state = 4, new state = 3 -- The actual state transition occurring

Event Code 17

```
#   4: 04/25/95 22:43:00 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  17
LLC test frame received
```

This message indicates that DLS received a specific frame type (test).

Event Code 36

```
38: 04/25/95 22:43:17 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  36
Unexpected protocol action: state = 11, event = 10 conn = 30927f70
```

These messages show that an illegal or unexpected event occurred. Although this does not always indicate a problem with the software, there could be a problem with the timer settings configured on each DLSw router. If the condition persists or causes improper operation, troubleshooting may be necessary.

state = 11 -- DISCONNECTED

event = 10 -- INFOFRAME Received

conn = 30927f70 -- The unique connection identifier

Event Code 45

```
#  10: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP XID frame rcvd in LLC, conn, state, flag: 30927f70, 4, 201
```

This message describes the receipt of an input frame from either TCP or the DLC:

SSP XID frame rcvd in LLC -- The type of frame received (XID) and where it was received (LLC, SDLC)

conn (30927f70) -- The unique connection identifier for this DLSw circuit. It will correspond to the correlator described in the DLSw RFCs state (4), CIRCUIT ESTABLISHED, as listed in the DLSw state table (see Table C-3).

flag (201) -- Nortel Networks use only.

DLSw Session Setup

Before configuring DLSw, you should be familiar with how DLSw establishes sessions between network end points. To establish SNA or NetBIOS sessions between end points (devices), Nortel Networks routers with DLSw enabled execute the following sequence of events:

- Upon receiving a TEST (POLL) or similar frame from an attached end station, the receiving slot performs the following:
  - -- Converts the TEST (POLL) frame into an SSP CANUREACH command.
  - -- Searches the appropriate cache to determine if the remote location is known. If the remote location is already in the cache, the CANUREACH is forwarded only to this remote location. If the remote location is not in the cache, DLSw forwards the CANUREACH to all remote routers specified in the DLSw peer IP table, if this table exists.
  - -- Forwards the packet to all other slots defined in the DLSw slot table.
- Upon receiving a CANUREACH frame, a DLSw slot:
  - -- Forwards the frame to all other slots defined in this router's DLSw slot table.
  - -- Converts the CANUREACH frame back to a TEST (POLL) frame.
  - -- Forwards the TEST (POLL) frame to all interfaces on this slot which have DLSw enabled.

- If the destination device resides on an attached LAN, then this device responds by broadcasting a TEST (RESPONSE) message. Upon receiving this response, the remote router:
  - -- Caches the MAC address (for SNA) or name (for NetBIOS) in the appropriate table on the router.
  - -- Converts the TEST (RESPONSE) packet into a DLSw ICANREACH frame.
  - -- Forwards the ICANREACH to the originating data link switch (router).
- Upon receiving the ICANREACH, the originating router:
  - -- Caches the MAC address or NetBIOS name and identity of the remote router in the appropriate table on the router.
  - -- Converts the ICANREACH back to a TEST (RESPONSE) frame.
  - -- Forwards the packet to the originating workstation.

At completion, all routers and end stations can forward SNA and NetBIOS packets appropriately, creating a logical session between end points.

Each slot on a Nortel Networks router running DLSw functions as an independent data link switch. The network administrator controls the packets forwarded to DLSw by specifying the appropriate SAPs in the DLSw SAP table.

Establishing DLSw/LLC Connections

Figure C-1 illustrates a sample dual-switch DLSw network and the network packet exchanges (transactions) that occur when two DLSw routers connect to each other. Connections generate debug event messages in the log file. These messages provide critical information that can help you troubleshoot or report network connection problems.

Figure C-1 identifies each transaction with a message number. Use this number to point to the specific debug message that describes the network activity.

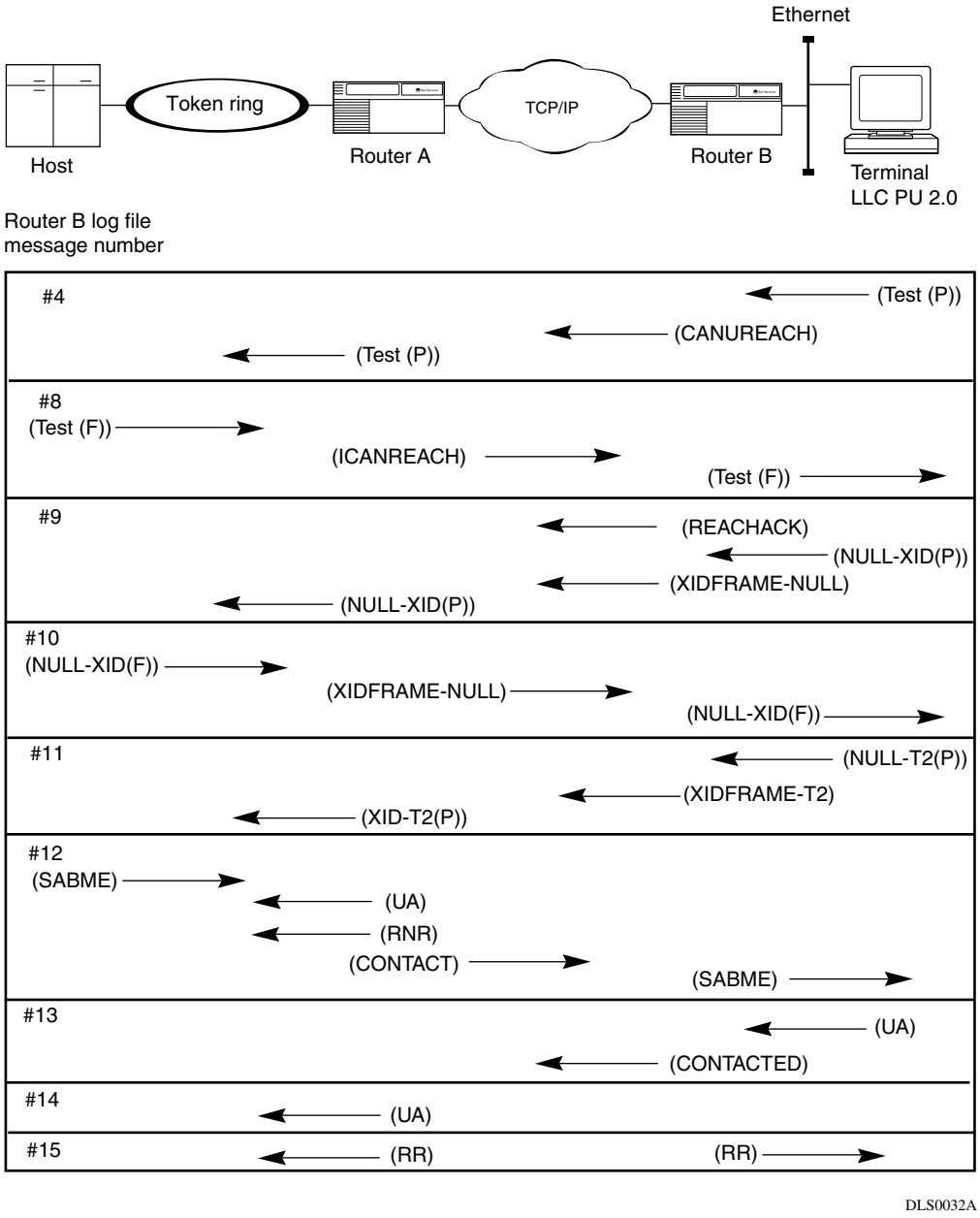

Figure C-1. Sample DLSw/LLC2 Network Connection Sequence (RFC 1434)

Reviewing the Network Log

This section describes the debug event messages that Router B logs when it establishes a connection with router A (see Figure C-1 on page C-10). Each message begins with a number that you can use to reference the network activity shown in Figure C-1.

The initial connection sequence begins when the terminal sends a Test (P) packet to router B. Router B sends a CANUREACH to router A. Router A forwards a Test (P) frame to the host.

```
# 4: 04/25/95 22:43:00 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  17
LLC test frame received
```

The host computer returns a Test (F) frame, informing router A that it is available. Router A then sends the ICANREACH frame to router B. Router B sends a Test (F) frame to the terminal.

```
# 8: 04/25/95 22:43:00 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  18
SSP ICANREACH in LLC frame received connection = 30927f70
```

Router B returns a REACHACK acknowledgment frame to router A. The terminal then sends a NULL-XID(P) frame to router B. Router B forwards an LLC XIDFRAME-NULL to router A. Router A sends a NULL-XID(P) to the host.

```
# 9: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  17
LLC XID frame received
```

The host returns a NULL-XID (F) frame to router A. Router A forwards an XIDFRAME-NULL packet to router B. Router B sends a NULL-XID(F) to the terminal.

```
# 10: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP XID frame rcvd in LLC, conn, state, flag: 30927f70, 4, 201
```

The terminal sends a NULL-T2 (P) frame to router B. Router B generates and sends an XIDFRAME-T2 to router A. Router A sends an XID-T2 (P) to the host.

```
#  11: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  17
LLC XID frame received
```

The host computer generates an SABME frame and sends it to router A. Router A returns UA and receiver not ready (RNR) frames back to the host. Router A then contacts router B, and router B sends the SABME contact frame to the terminal.

```
#  12: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP contact frame rcvd in LLC, conn, state, flag: 30927f70, 4, 201
```

The terminal returns an acknowledgment UA packet to router B. Router B informs router A that the contact is accepted. A state change occurs.

```
#  13: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in ssp_contact, conn = 30927f70, old state = 4, new
state = 3
```

Router A sends an acknowledgment UA packet to the host computer.

```
#  14: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  17
LLC connect_conf frame received
```

The DLSw circuit reaches the CONNECTED state. Router A and router B return RR packets to their clients.

```
#  15: 04/25/95 22:43:01 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in connect_conf, conn = 30927f70, old state = 3, new
state = 1
```

Establishing DLSw/SDLC Connections

Figure C-2 illustrates a sample dual-switch DLSw/SDLC network and the network packet exchanges that occur during SDLC connection establishment. Connection establishment generates debug event messages in the log file.

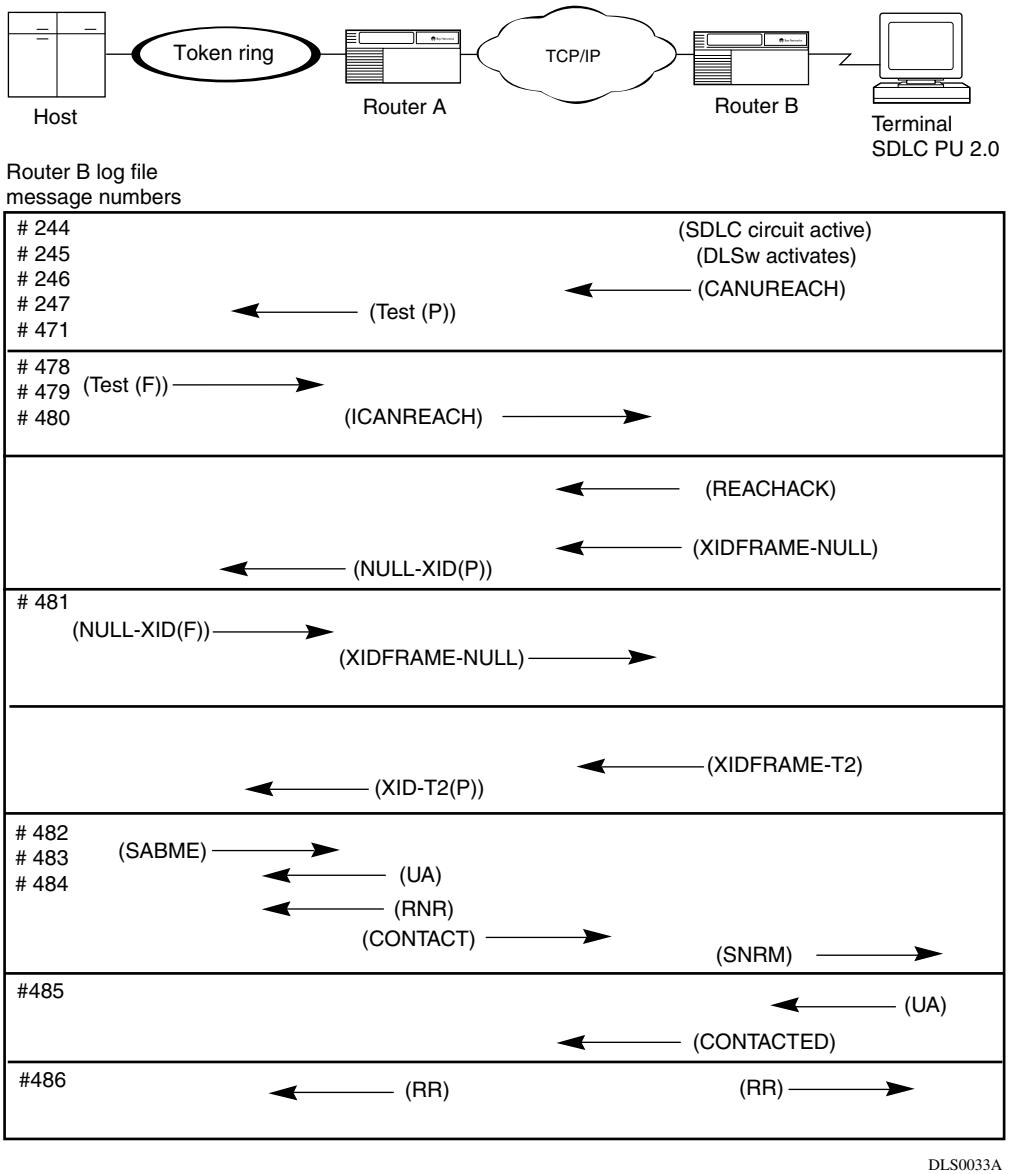

Figure C-2. Sample DLSw/SDLC Network Connection Sequence

Reviewing the Network Connection Sequence

This section describes the debug event messages that router B (see Figure C-2 on page C-13) logs when it connects with router A. Each message begins with a number that you can use to reference the network activity shown in Figure C-2.

SDLC becomes active on the circuit and DLSw notifies SDLC that it is configured on the circuit. SDLC processes the DLSw notification and sends a message indicating successful registration. DLSw attempts to contact the host with a CANUREACH frame. Router B sends the CANUREACH to router A. Router A forwards Test (P) frame to the host.

```
# 244: 07/12/95 08:46:07 DEBUG     SLOT  1 SDLC Event Code:   8
sdlc_proto_gate_init
# 245: 07/12/95 08:46:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  86
received CO_ISAP registration response from SDLC, nwif = 3171ad50
# 246: 07/12/95 08:46:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 SDLC Event Code:  11
DLC_IF_CONNECT_SEND_MSG
# 247: 07/12/95 08:46:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  60
received CONNECT response from SDLC port = 3171ad50, ls_ref =
3171e230
# 471: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  18
SSP canureach frame received connection = 00000000
```

The host computer returns a Test (F) frame, informing router A that it is available. Router A sends the ICANREACH frame to router B.

```
# 478: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  18
SSP ICANREACH new connection frame received connection = 31619ea0
 479: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  18
SSP ICANREACH connection frame received connection = 31619ea0
# 480: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  18
SSP ICANREACH in SDLC frame received connection = 31619ea0
```

Router B returns a REACHACK acknowledgment frame to router A. Router B forwards an XIDFRAME-NULL to router A. Router A sends a NULL-XID(P) to the host.

The host returns a NULL-XID (F) frame to router A. Router A forwards an XIDFRAME-NULL packet to router B.

```
# 481: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP XID frame rcvd in SDLC, conn, state, flag: 31619ea0, 4, 1
```

Router B generates and sends an XIDFRAME-T2 to router A. Router A sends an XID-T2 (P) to the host.

The host computer generates an SABME frame and sends it to router A. Router A returns UA and RNR frames back to the host. Router A contacts router B. Router B accepts the CONTACT frame, causing a state change. Router B sends the Set Mode indication SNRM frame to SDLC.

```
# 482: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP contact frame rcvd in SDLC, conn, state, flag: 31619ea0, 4, 1
# 483: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in ssp_contact, conn = 31619ea0, old state = 4, new
state = 3
# 484: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 SDLC Event Code:  11
DLC_IF_SET_MODE_SEND_MSG
```

SDLC acknowledges the Set Mode indication (UA).

```
# 485: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  73
received SET_MODE response from SDLC
port = 3171ad50, ls_ref = 3171e230
```

The DLSw circuit reaches the CONNECTED state. Router A and router B return RR packets to their clients.

```
# 486: 07/12/95 08:48:08 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in sdlc_connected, conn = 31619ea0, old state = 3, new
tate = 1
```

Disconnecting from the Network

This section provides some sample log messages that can occur when you disconnect from a DLSw network. Included is a description of each event, followed by the actual log messages.

A local end station disconnects and generates a DISCONNECT frame. The DISCONNECT frame causes a state change to DISCONNECTED. The local router sends the DISCONNECT frame to the remote router.

```
#  18: 04/25/95 22:43:09 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  17
LLC DISC frame received
#  19: 04/25/95 22:43:09 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in llc_disc_ind, conn = 30927f70, old state = 1, new
state = 11
```

The remote router issues a DL_HALTED frame and sends it to the local router.

```
#  20: 04/25/95 22:43:09 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP dl_halted frame rcvd in LLC, conn, state, flag: 30927f70, b, 0
```

The local end station is DISCONNECTED end to end.

```
#  21: 04/25/95 22:43:09 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in ssp_dlhalted, conn = 30927f70, old state = 11, new
state = 11
```

Troubleshooting DLSw

This section provides general information on troubleshooting DLSw and the basic DLSw component subsystems. It covers the following topics:

- Viewing Isolated Problems
- Common DLSw Problems and Nonproblems
- DLSw Troubleshooting Tables, covering symptoms, possible causes, and actions specific for the following categories:
  - -- DLSw configurations
  - -- DLSw interfaces
  - -- TCP
  - -- SNA
  - -- NetBIOS
  - -- LLC
  - -- SDLC

Viewing Isolated Problems

This section assumes that you have isolated a problem to DLSw. Troubleshoot DLSw as follows:

1. **Use the Events Manager or the Technician Interface to filter the log to display messages of all severity levels for DLSw.**

   If you use the Technician Interface, enter:

   log -fftwid -eDLS -s*<slot_no.>*

For example, if you are filtering events from slots 3 and 4, enter:

```
log -fftwid -eDLS -s3 -s4
```

2. **Make sure that the DLSw MTU size matches the synchronous line MTU size.**

   Unnecessary packet fragmentation can occur when these settings do not match.

3. **Use the Technician Interface or the Statistics Manager to inspect the global SRB settings, such as the internal LAN ID, the group LAN ID, and the bridge ID. If you are using the Technician Interface, enter:**

   ```
   get wfBrSr.*.0
   ```

4. **Use the Technician Interface or the Statistics Manager to inspect the global DLSw settings, such as the configured TCP window size and the total number of established DLSw sessions. If you are using the Technician Interface, enter:**

   ```
   get wfDls.*.0
   ```

   Make sure that the virtual ring ID for the IP cloud is unique and is consistent among all sites.

5. **Use the Technician Interface or the Statistics Manager to inspect the state of all of the DLSw interfaces currently configured, and the value of the instance field. If you are using the Technician Interface, enter:**

   ```
   get wfDlsInterfaceEntry.3.*
   ```

6. **Use the Technician Interface or the Statistics Manager to inspect the state of all of the TCP connections. If you are using the Technician Interface, enter:**

   ```
   get wfTcpConnEntry.2.*
   ```

   Make sure that all active TCP sessions are in an “established” state (represented by the value 5).

   If the sessions are in an established state, the local and remote DLSw TCP slot/peer configuration is probably correct.

If the sessions are not in an established state, do the following:

- Make sure all slots configured to run DLSw have a slot IP address assigned.
- Make sure that the slot IP address corresponds to the DLSw Peers setting at the remote site.

7. **Use the Technician Interface or the Statistics Manager to inspect the reception messages and connection state changes.**

Common DLSw Problems and Nonproblems

This section describes common problems and "nonproblems" (or behaviors) associated with DLSw.

Common DLSw Problems

Table C-4 describes common problems with DLSw, LLC, and SDLC, and lists causes and actions.

Table C-5. Common DLSw Problems

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
DLSw/TCP connections do not come up.	Improper DLS Slot Table configuration; no IP address is configured on the slot.	Each slot running DLSw requires a unique IP address assigned to each DLSw slot.
DLSw/TCP connections partially come up.	No peer is configured.	Add a peer and its IP address to the peer table.
DLSw connections do not come up.	DLS is configured on the wrong slot.	Configure DLS on an LLC or SDLC interface.
Single-switch sessions do not establish.	Both interfaces are not configured.	Configure two interfaces for single-switch operation.

(continued)

Table C-5. Common DLSw Problems *(continued)*

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
Frame rejects cause session failures.	End station MAXIN parameter is smaller than wfLlcInterfaceTw.	Verify the configuration of the end station and check the configured LLC window sizes.
	MTU received is too large for configuration.	Increase the wfLlcInterfaceMaxMtu variable to larger than the possible data size.
	T1 timer is too short for long WAN delays.	Increase the wfLlcinterfaceTackWait setting to avoid timeouts.
The router is sending RNRs.	Mismatch of SDLC link station interface MAXOUT parameter.	Edit the MAXOUT parameter setting.
The DLS interface configured for SDLC does not come up.	Improper cabling.	Install the correct cable(s). See “Verifying the WAN Cabling” on page C-31.
An IBM AS/400 cannot connect to another AS/400.	Using SAP 0 for SSAP on test frames.	Configure SAP 0 in the DLSw SAP configuration.

(continued)

Table C-5. Common DLSw Problems *(continued)*

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
File transfers with large packets are slow.	DLSw uses more CPU than SRB.	Edit DLSw packaging parameters; use protocol prioritization and prioritize SNA traffic over other protocols.
	The TCP window size is too small, causing RNRs at the source.	TCP flow control is limiting performance; increase the TCP Window Size parameter setting.
	The TCP window size is too large, causing latency problems.	Critical data is being buffered by TCP; decrease the TCP Window Size parameter setting and check performance.
	IP WAN frames are fragmented.	Set the Virtual Ring MTU parameter to less than the WAN maximum transfer unit.
	TCP is transmitting too many frames.	Decrease the TCP Window Size parameter setting and check performance.
The response time is slower than normal.	The TCP window size is too large.	Decrease the TCP Window Size parameter setting and check performance.

Common DLSw Nonproblems

The DLSw log often contains debug event messages that report conditions about proper network activity. These debug messages are not errors and should not be treated or reported for further action. The DLSw nonproblems include:

- Unexpected protocol action
- TCP open error 29
- DLSw peers not reachable due to lack of a route
- Traffic going over SRB instead of DLSw path
- Resetting dynamic window algorithm
- Expecting SNRM prior to DLSw connection to host
- Slow performance due to pacing

Unexpected Protocol Action

An unexpected protocol action occurred multiple times. This condition indicates that frames are being transmitted between two DLSw routers while an LLC Disconnect Pending frame is processing. This condition clears itself and the DLSw disconnect sequence finishes normally. The following sample log entries show this condition:

```
#  36: 04/25/95 22:43:17 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  16
State change in llc_disc_ind, conn = 30927f70, old state = 1,
new state = 11

#  38: 04/25/95 22:43:17 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  36
Unexpected protocol action: state = 11, event = 10 conn = 30927f70

#  39: 04/25/95 22:43:17 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:   0
The previous event on slot 1 repeated 7 time(s).  [Code 36]

#  40: 04/25/95 22:43:17 DEBUG     SLOT  1 DLS Event Code:  45
SSP dl_halted frame rcvd in LLC, conn, state, flag: 30927f70, b,
0
```

TCP Open Error 29

The DLSw peer connections through TCP cannot be activated until the source (local) IP interface becomes active. For example, token ring networks that take longer to initialize may cause this error in the log. The TCP sessions establish when the IP interface activates. For example:

```
#  36: 04/25/95 22:43:17 INFO     SLOT  1 TCP Event Code:  7
TCP Error: 29 Opening 192.200.1.25,2065 - 192.200.4.40,2067 TCB:
0x3042cf0
```

DLSw Peers Not Reachable Due to Lack of a Route

IP needs to route the TCP connect request to the remote peer through the standard routing mechanisms. If IP cannot reach the destination address, the TCP peer connection cannot occur.

Traffic Going over SRB Instead of DLSw Path

Performance is below normal and data traverses the network over SRB instead of the expected DLSw path. This could be caused by DLSw configured on the IP/WAN interface on the router instead of the destination port where the DLSw traffic is to terminate.

Resetting Dynamic Window Algorithm

Proper LLC flow control operation is indicated by messages stating that the dynamic window algorithm is resetting.

Expecting SNRM Prior to DLSw Connection to Host

See *Configuring SDLC Services* and check the Pre-Activation Contact Frame parameter setting.

Slow Performance Due to Pacing

If you experience slow performance and following the steps in Table C-5 does not help, check the host pacing parameters. These parameters should be set to 0 for optimum performance over high-latency links.

DLSw Troubleshooting Tables

Tables C-6 to C-12 provide the following troubleshooting information for DLSw:

- DLSw configurations
- DLSw interfaces
- TCP
- SNA
- NetBIOS
- LLC
- SDLC

Table C-6. DLSw Configuration Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
The log file contains no DLSw, SDLC, LLC, or TCP messages.	Specific router slot is not active for DLSw configuration. Image is missing components.	Check the hardware configuration to see if DLSw is configured on the slot. Make sure that the router software image contains DLS.exe, LLC.exe, NBASE.exe, and SDLC.exe.
Broadcasts are not seen on the desired LAN segments.	Peer is not configured for the destination router.	Configure at least one peer that must receive broadcasts.

Table C-7. DLSw Interface Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
The DLSw interface state is down.	Physical interface is not up.	Check the connections; make sure that the physical interface is up.
	DLC interface is not up.	Check the DLC configuration and delete the interface, if necessary; notify Nortel Networks.
The DLC interface is down.	Physical interface is not up.	Check the connections; make sure that the physical interface is up.
The DLSw interface is down; the LLC interface is up.	DLSw interface is configured on a different slot than the physical interface.	Check and correct the configuration to ensure that DLSw is configured on the same slot as the physical interface.
	DLSw interface is different than corresponding LLC wfLlcInterfaceEntry.wfLlcInterfaceLlc2Cc.	Correct the configuration; DLSw must be configured on the slot where DLC termination occurs.
	Potential LLC problem if it is not notifying DLSw that it is present.	Delete the LLC interface; contact Nortel Networks.
Ethernet interfaces drop sessions from token ring interfaces.	Frames sent to Ethernet are larger than 1500 bytes.	Set the DLSw Virtual Ring MTU parameter to 1518 or less on any routers with token ring.
Ethernet sessions establish with difficulty.	Loops are formed by dual router Ethernet connections.	Two DLSw routers connected to an Ethernet segment must have filters to avoid loops.

Table C-8. TCP Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
DLSw/TCP connections do not come up.	Improper DLS slot table configuration; no IP address is configured on slot.	Each slot running DLSw requires a unique IP address assigned to each DLSw slot.
DLSw/TCP connections partially come up.	No peer is configured. Peer is not reachable.	Add a peer and its IP address to the peer table. Check to see if IP routing is enabled and the peer is configured or known to DLSw.
TCP connections come up, but traffic is not passed.	DLSw slot table configuration does not match DLC interface location.	Correct the configuration by creating a DLS slot entry for every slot that has a DLC interface.
TCP has excessive retransmissions.	TCP window is too large. TCP is filling WAN buffers and causing dropped frames.	Edit the TCP Window Size parameter and specify a smaller value. Configure protocol prioritization and allocate adequate queue depth.
TCP sessions do not come down when the IP path is lost.	TCP Keepalive Time parameter is set to 0.	Edit the KeepAlive Time parameter and specify a value from 0 to 2147483647 seconds. Refer to the KeepAlive Time parameter on page A-21 for more information.

Table C-9. SNA Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
SNA stations cannot connect over DLSw.	Host is unavailable or IP cannot reach it.	Verify the status of the host and attempt to ping the target router.
	XID is incorrect.	Obtain correct XID values.
	Destination MAC address is incorrect; if the LLC media is Ethernet, the address must be in noncanonical format.	Verify that the destination MAC address is correct; if the LLC media is Ethernet, flip the address format.
	First experience with the new device.	Obtain flows and traces; contact Nortel Networks.
SNA stations fail in heavy network traffic.	Other traffic is taking too much time on the WAN.	Use protocol prioritization to provide more bandwidth to SNA.
	DLC initiated termination of the session.	Depending on the configuration, see the LLC or the SDLC troubleshooting table.

Table C-10. NetBIOS Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
NetBIOS stations cannot connect over DLSw.	NetBIOS SAP is not configured. Excessive broadcast traffic on the WAN.	Configure SAP 0xF0 in the DLSw SAP TAble. Use traffic filters, caches, or network design to limit unnecessary NetBIOS traffic; use protocol prioritization to provide more DLSw bandwidth on the WAN.
NetBIOS stations cannot keep sessions alive during data transfer.	PC session level timeout is short. WAN connectivity is lost or not rerouting fast enough.	Set the OS/2 *IBMLAN.INI* file parameter SRVHEURISTICS to 9. Use traffic filters, caches, or network design to limit unnecessary NetBIOS traffic; use protocol prioritization to provide more DLSw bandwidth on the WAN.

Table C-11. LLC Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
Frame rejects cause session failures.	End station MAXIN parameter is smaller than wfLlcInterfaceTw.	Verify the configuration of the end station and check the configured LLC window sizes.
	MTU received is too large for configuration.	Increase the wfLlcInterfaceMaxMtu variable to larger than the possible data size.
	T1 timer is too short for long WAN delays.	Increase the variable wfLlcinterfaceTackWait setting to avoid timeouts.

Table C-12. SDLC Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
DLSw configured for SDLC does not come up.	Incorrect configuration.	Check the configuration to ensure that SDLC is configured and connected.
	DLSw connection is not establishing.	Make sure that the router software image contains *DLS.exe*, *LLC.exe*, *NBASE.exe*, and *SDLC.exe*.
	Improper cabling.	Verify that you are using the correct cables; see “Verifying the WAN Cabling” on page C-31.

(continued)

Table C-12. SDLC Troubleshooting *(continued)*

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
SDLC does not connect to the host computer.	SDLC interface is not active.	Check the configuration to ensure that there is an SDLC connection.
	SDLC local devices are not configured properly.	Check the DLSw local device configuration.
	Source or destination MAC address is incorrect; if the LLC media is Ethernet, the address must be in noncanonical format.	Verify that the MAC address is correct; if the LLC media is Ethernet, flip the address format.
	XID is incorrect.	Obtain correct XID values.
	SDLC device is configured for NRZI.	Check the SDLC device and set the Sync Line Coding parameter. NRZI is not supported on dual or quad sync interfaces.

Table C-12. SDLC Troubleshooting *(continued)*

Problem	Possible Cause	Action/Solution
The SDLC connection is up and down.	Idle timeout is too short for some configurations. SDLC device is configured for half/full duplex.	Increase the SDLC Idle Line Timer parameter (wfSdlcPortAdminIdleTimer). For a half-duplex physical line, set the RTS Enable parameter to Enable or set wfSyncRtsEnable to 1; for a full-duplex data link, set the Primary Full Duplex parameter to Falsefull duplex or set the variable wfSdlcPortAdminPriFdplx to 2.
If a PU device fails on an AS/400 multidrop circuit, all PU devices will fail.	RTS signalling is disabled on the router interface connected to the AS/400 low-speed controller. Flag streaming is not enabled for the AS/400 high-speed controller.	Enable RTS on the router's line interface connected to the AS/400. Set wfSyncForceIFTF to 4 (applicable for AN®, ASN™, ARN™, System 5000™ serial modules, and the BN® octal sync module. If you use flag streaming, you do not need to enable RTS.

Verifying the WAN Cabling

Tables C-13 to C-16 list the specific WAN cables that ensure reliable DLSw connectivity over an SLDC connection. Each table includes:

- Nortel Networks BLN®, BCN®, AN®, ARN™, ASN™, or EASF cable part number
- Pin description and connector type
- Modem or no modem configuration

Table C-13. BLN and BCN Synchronous Interface Cables

Nortel Networks Cable	Description	Modem/ No Modem
7215	15-pin to male V.35	Modem
7255	15-pin to male RS-232	Modem
7221	15-pin to male X.21	Modem
7941	15-pin to female RS-232	No modem
7942	15-pin to female V.35	No modem
AA0018003	44-pin to male X.21	No modem

Table C-14. AN, ARN, ASN, and EASF Synchronous Interface Cables

Nortel Networks Cable	Description	Modem/ No Modem
7220	44-pin to male V.35	Modem
7224	44-pin to male X.21	Modem
7826	44-pin to male RS-232	Modem
7943	44-pin to female RS-232	No modem
7944	44-pin to female V.35	No modem
AA0018004	15-pin to female X.21	No modem

Table C-15. Octal Sync Interface Cables

Nortel Networks Cable	Description	Modem/ No Modem
7932	50-pin to male V.35	Modem
7934	50-pin to male RS-232	Modem
7936	50-pin to male X.21	Modem
7945	50-pin to female RS-232	No modem
7946	50-pin to female V.35	No modem
AA0018005	50-pin to female X.21	No modem

Table C-16. Male No-Modem Cables

Nortel Networks Cable	Description	Router
7218	15-pin to male RS-232	BLN/BCN
7219	15-pin to male V.35	BLN/BCN
7833	44-pin to male RS-232	AN/ASN
7834	44-pin to male V.35	AN/ASN

Flowcharts

Figure C-3 shows the data flow between two Nortel Networks routers running RFC 1434 (for PU 2.0 over LLC).

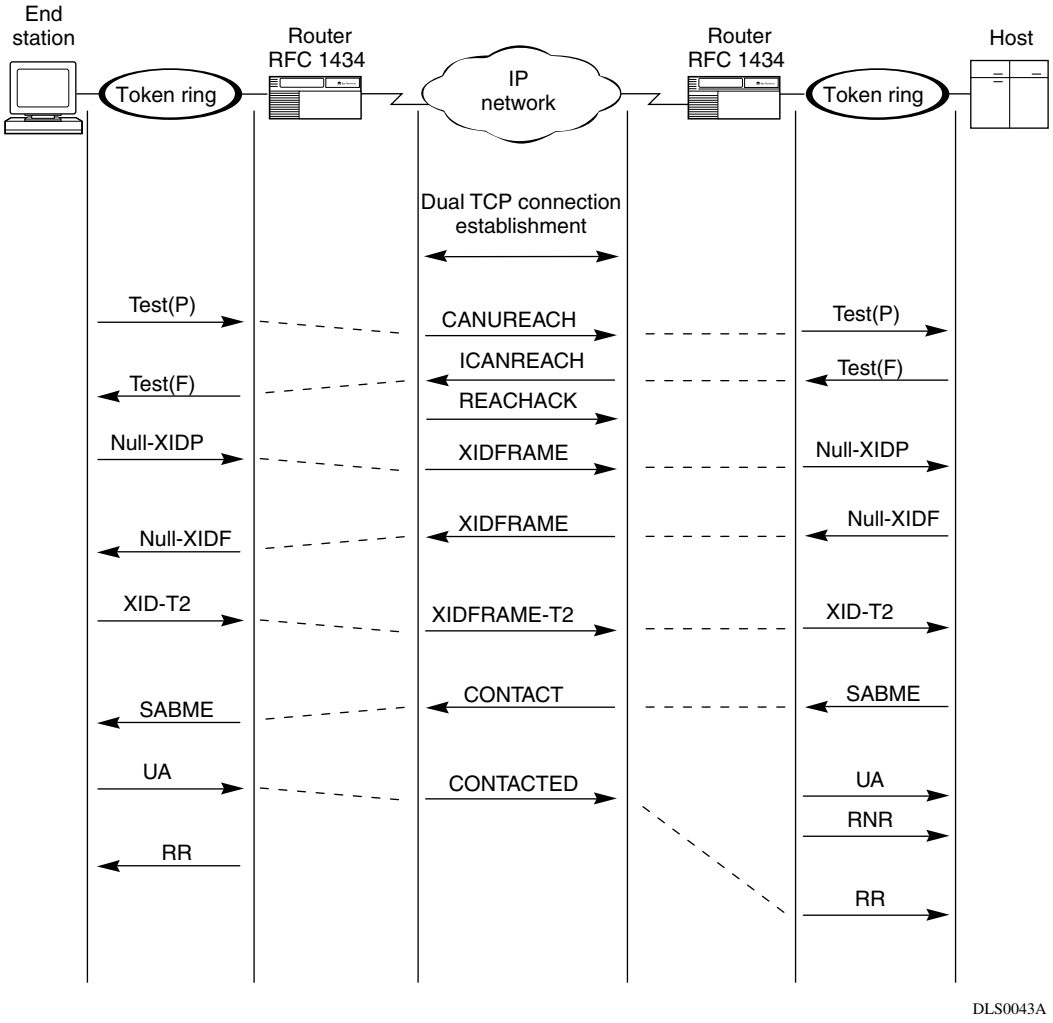

Figure C-3. Data Flow for Routers Running RFC 1434 (PU 2.0 over LLC)

Figure C-4 shows the data flow between two Nortel Networks routers running RFC 1434 (for PU 2.1 over LLC).

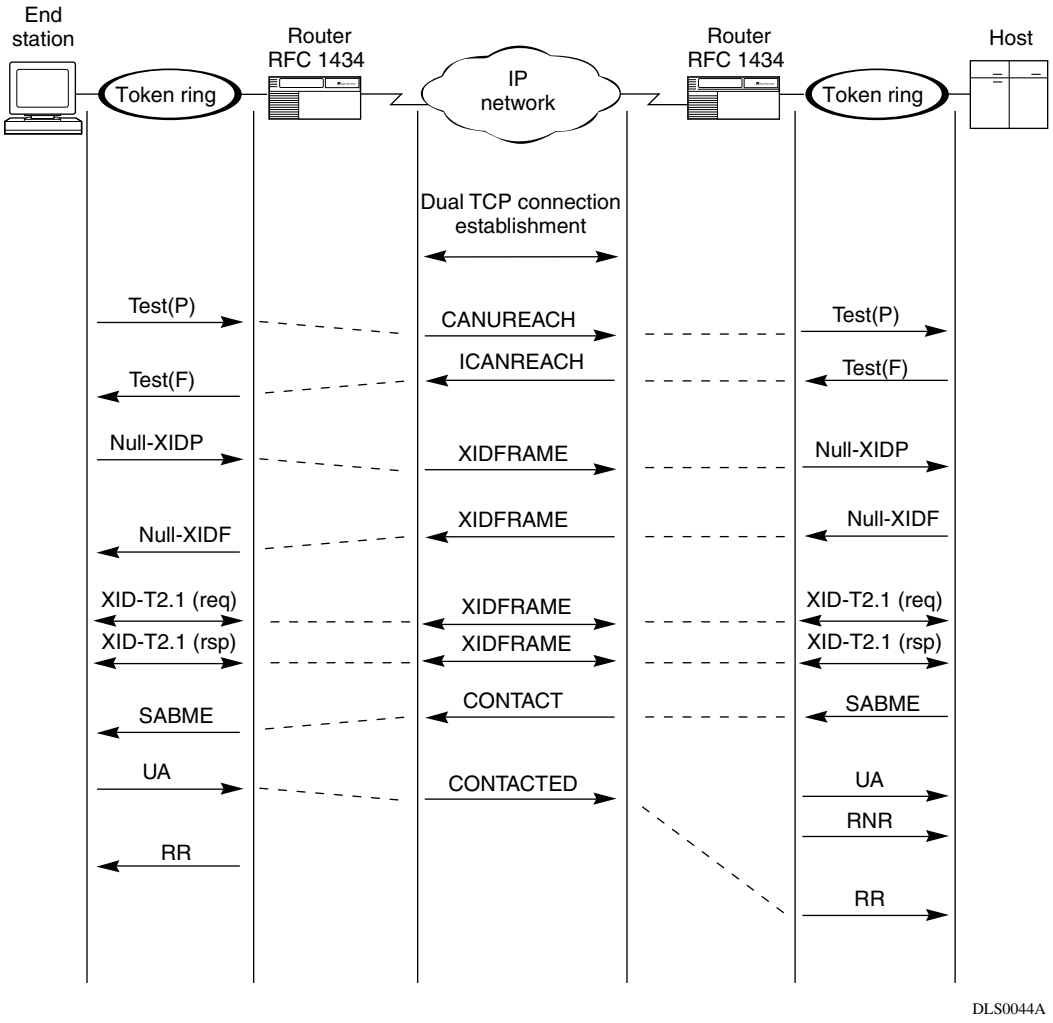

Figure C-4. Data Flow for Routers Running RFC 1434 (PU 2.1 over LLC)

Figure C-5 shows the data flow between two Nortel Networks routers running RFC 1795.

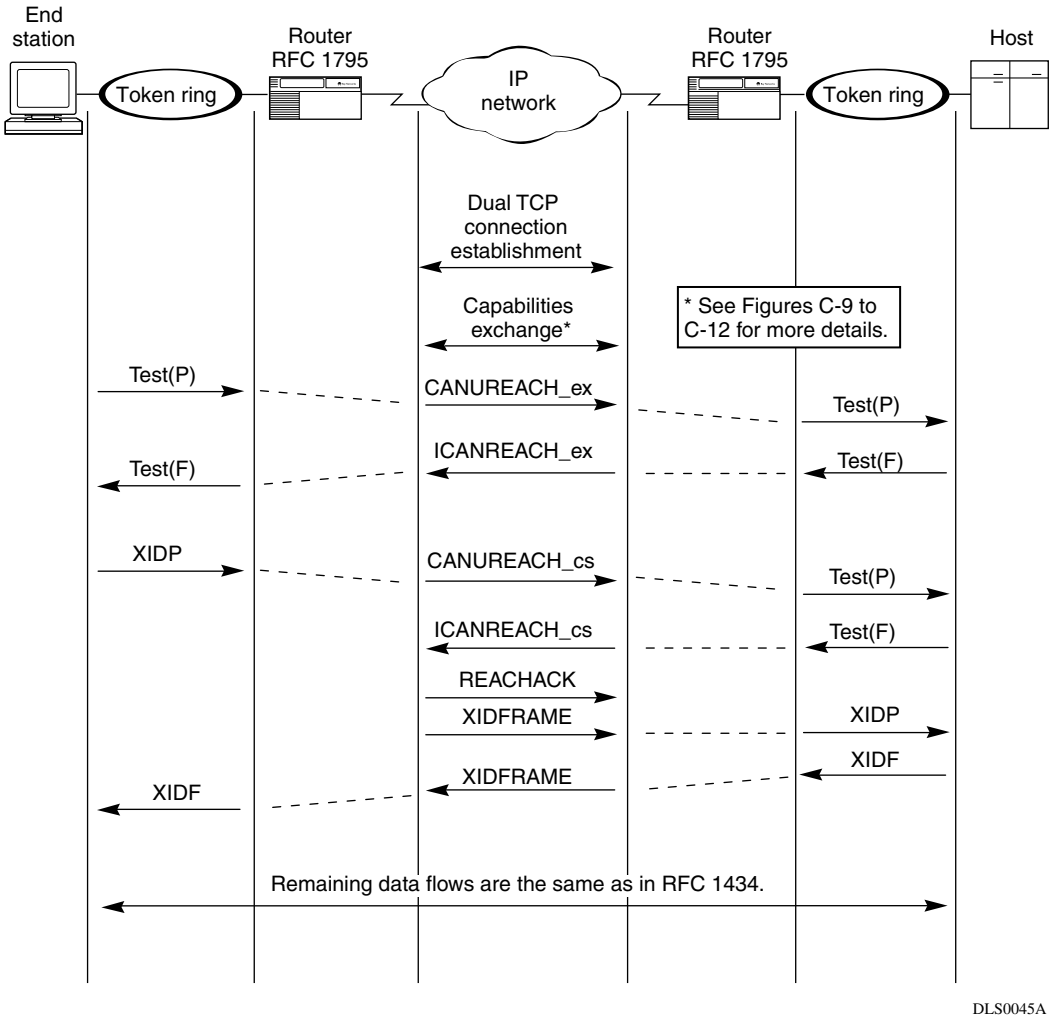

Figure C-5. Data Flow for Routers Running RFC 1795

Figure C-6 shows the data flow between two Nortel Networks routers running DLSw Version 2.0.

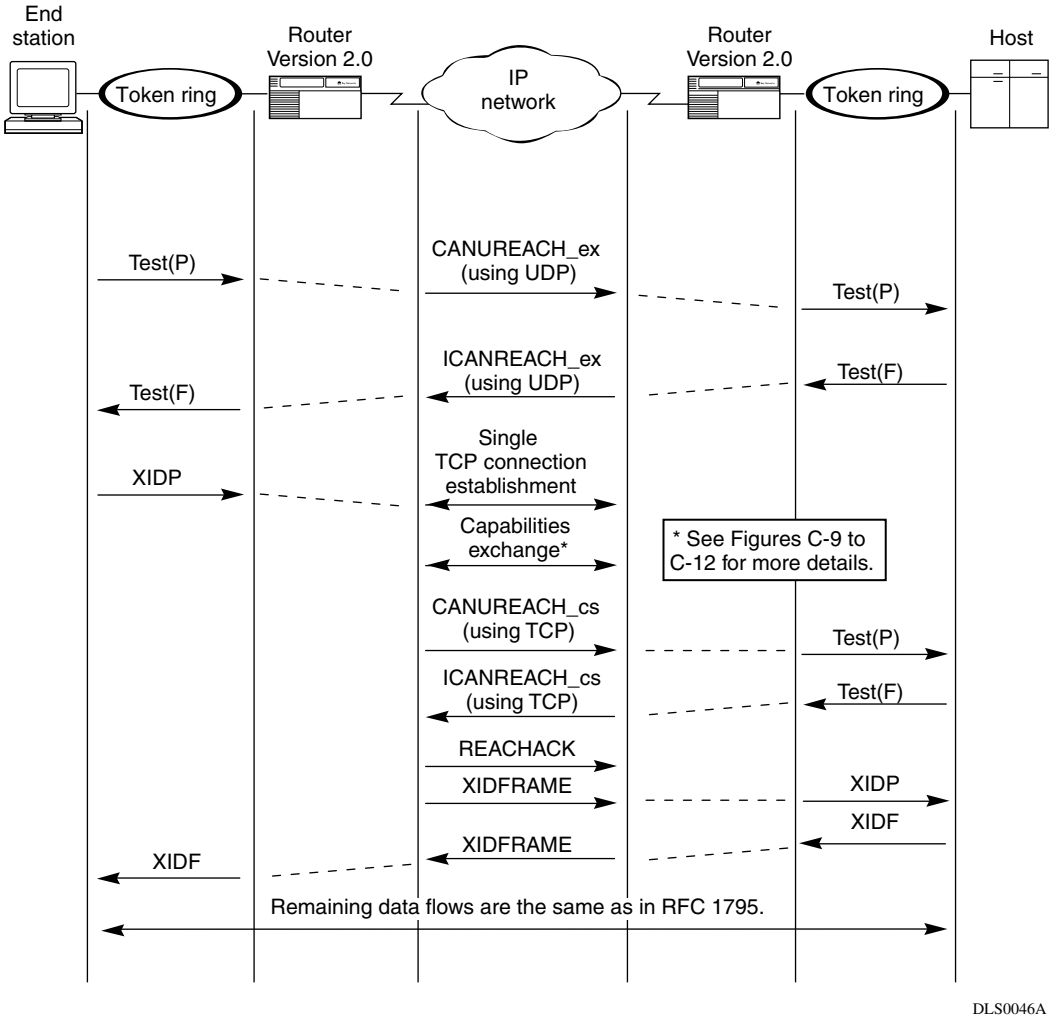

Figure C-6. Data Flow for Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0

Figure C-7 shows the data flow between two Nortel Networks routers running DLSw Version 2.0 and RFC 1795. A peer is configured on the router running RFC 1795.

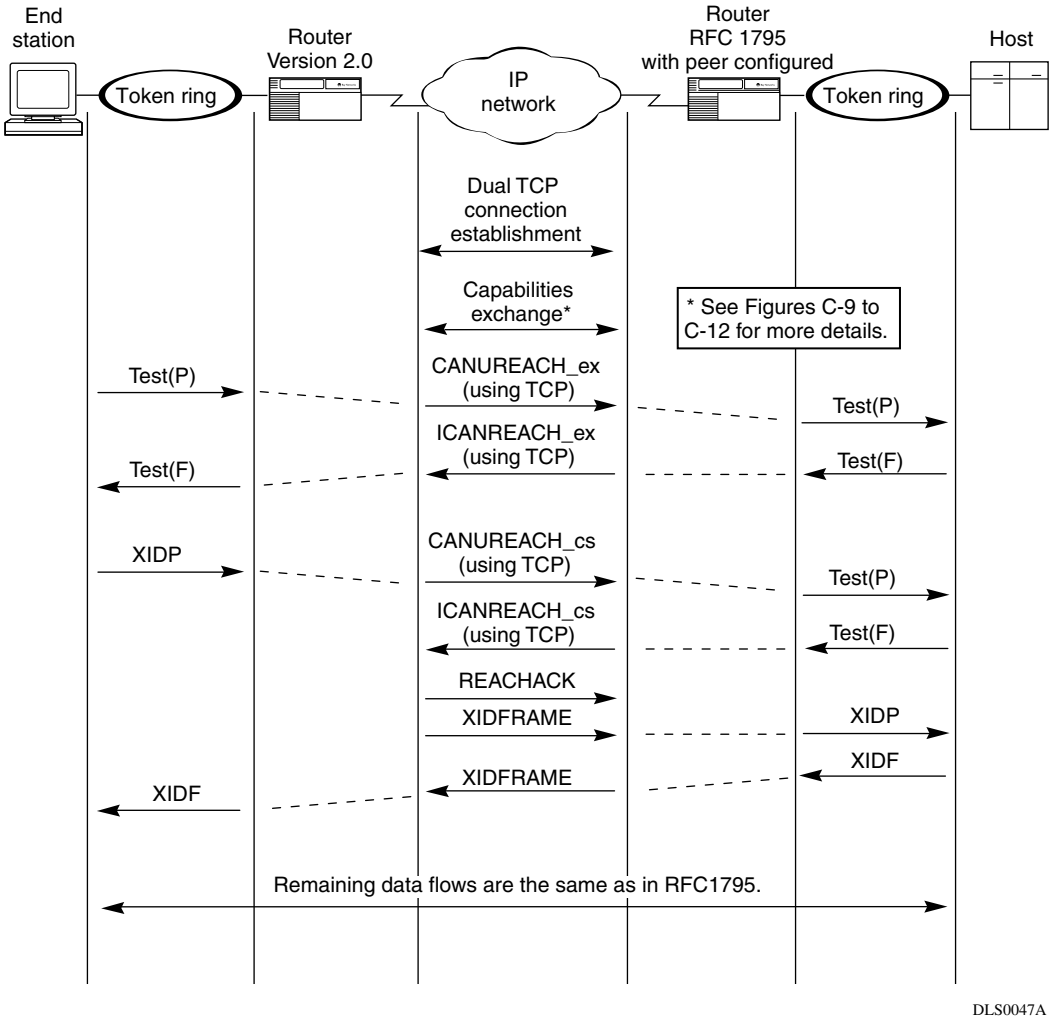

Figure C-7. Data Flow for Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 and RFC 1795 (Peer on RFC 1795 Router)

Figure C-8 shows the data flow between a Nortel Networks router running DLSw Version 2.0 and one running RFC 1795. A peer is configured on the router running Version 2.0.

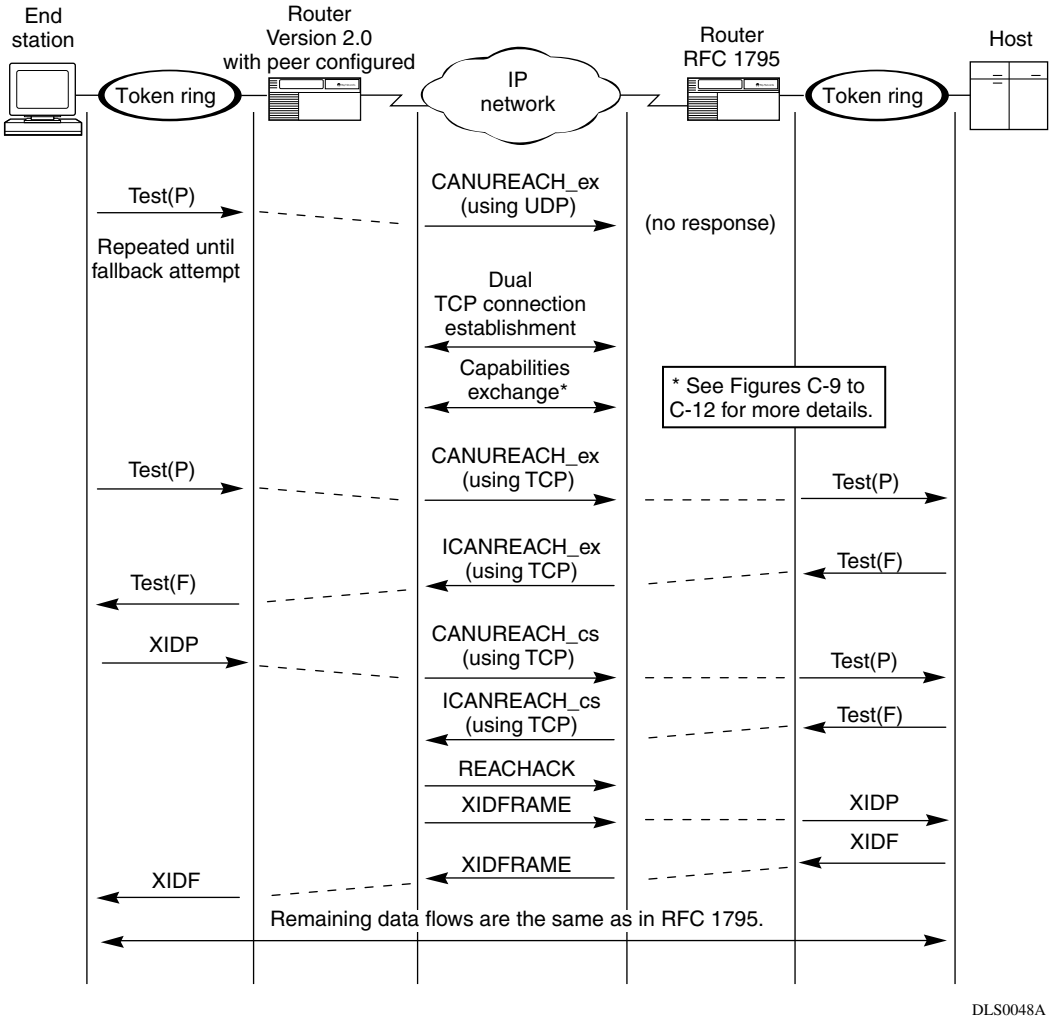

Figure C-8. Data Flow for Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 and RFC 1795 (Peer on Version 2.0 Router)

Figure C-9 shows a capabilities exchange between two Nortel Networks routers running DLSw Version 2.0. A UDP or Unknown peer is configured on one of the routers.

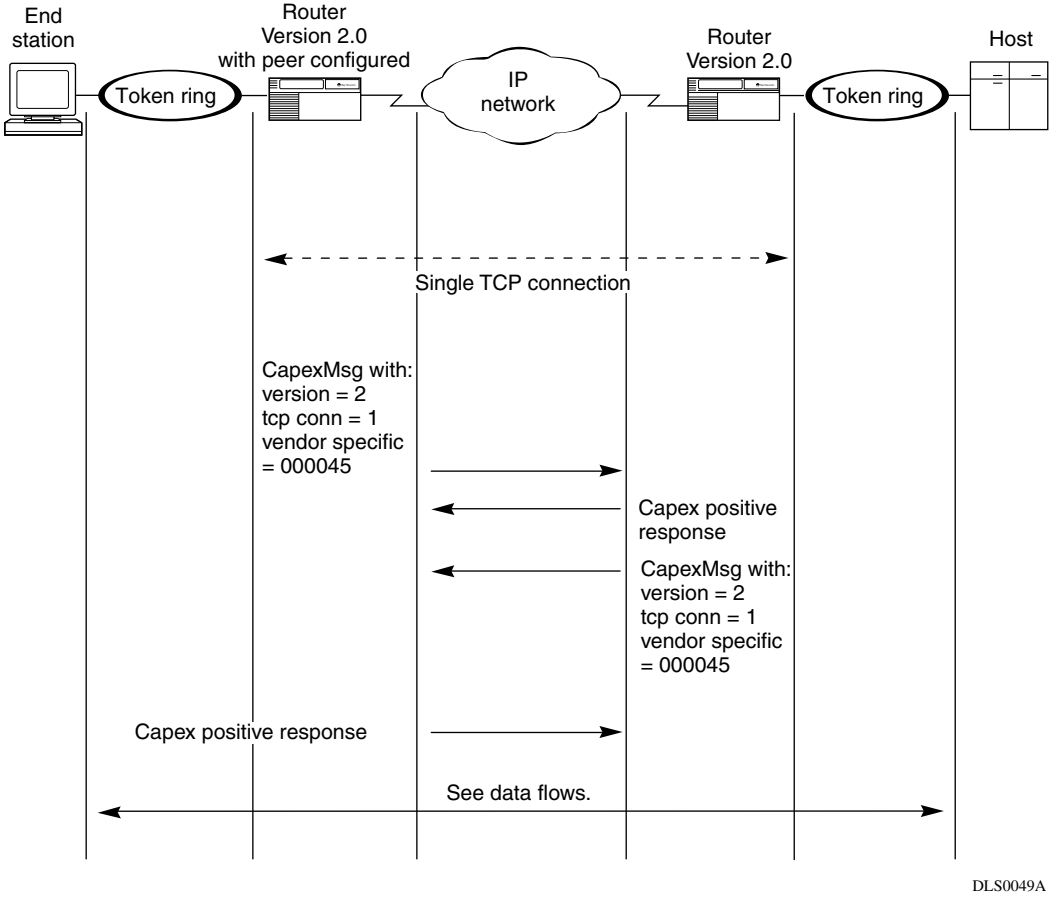
End station
Router Version 2.0 with peer configured
IP network
Router Version 2.0
Host
Token ring
Token ring
Single TCP connection
CapexMsg with: version = 2 tcp conn = 1 vendor specific = 000045
Capex positive response
CapexMsg with: version = 2 tcp conn = 1 vendor specific = 000045
Capex positive response
See data flows.
DLS0049A

Figure C-9. Exchange Between Two Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 (UDP or Unknown Peer on One Router)

Figure C-10 shows a capabilities exchange between a Nortel Networks router running RFC 1795 and one running Version 2.0. A peer is configured on the router running RFC 1795.

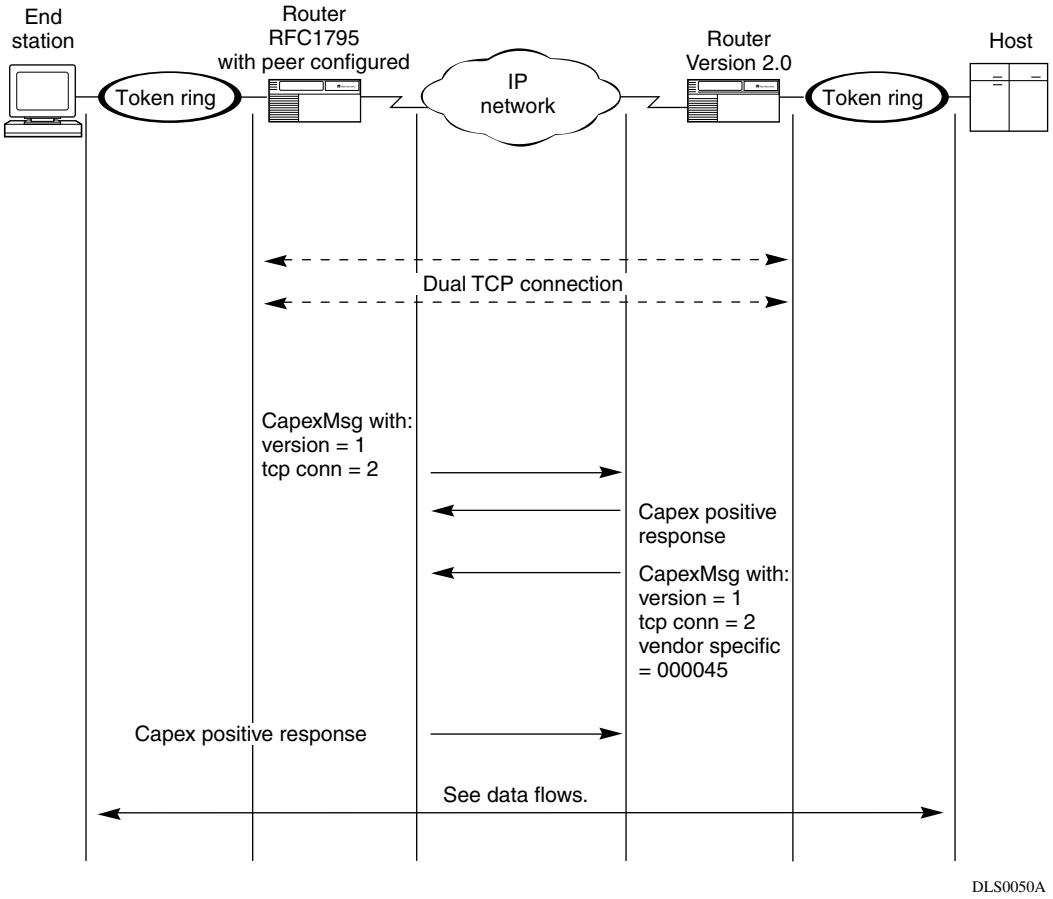

Figure C-10. Exchange Between a Router Running DLSw Version 2.0 and One Running RFC 1795 (Peer on RFC 1795 Router)

Figure C-11 shows a capabilities exchange between two Nortel Networks routers running DLSw Version 2.0. A peer is configured as Unknown and in fallback mode on one of the routers.

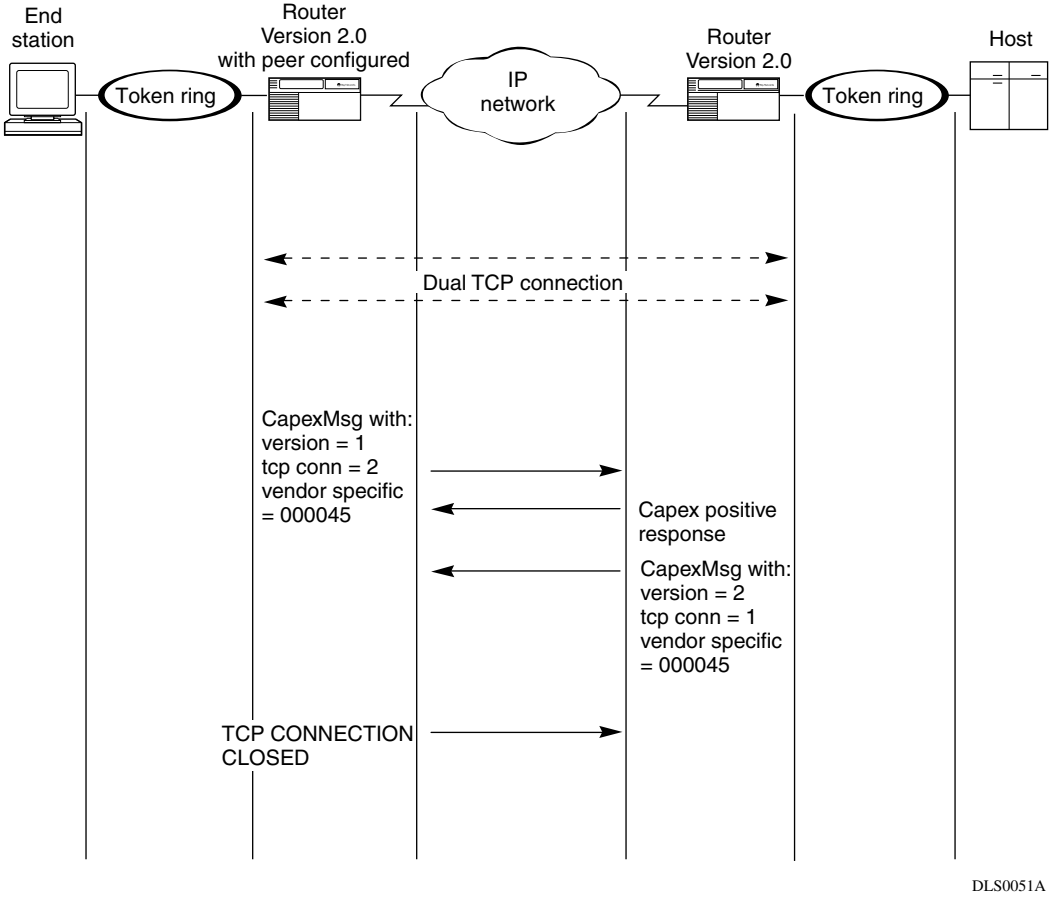
End station
Router Version 2.0 with peer configured
IP network
Router Version 2.0
Host
Token ring
Token ring
Dual TCP connection
CapexMsg with: version = 1 tcp conn = 2 vendor specific = 000045
Capex positive response
CapexMsg with: version = 2 tcp conn = 1 vendor specific = 000045
TCP CONNECTION CLOSED
DLS0051A

Figure C-11. Exchange Between Two Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 (Unknown Peer in Fallback Mode on One Router)

Figure C-12 shows a capabilities exchange between two Nortel Networks routers running DLSw Version 2.0. A peer is configured as TCP and Remote router in fallback mode on one of the routers.

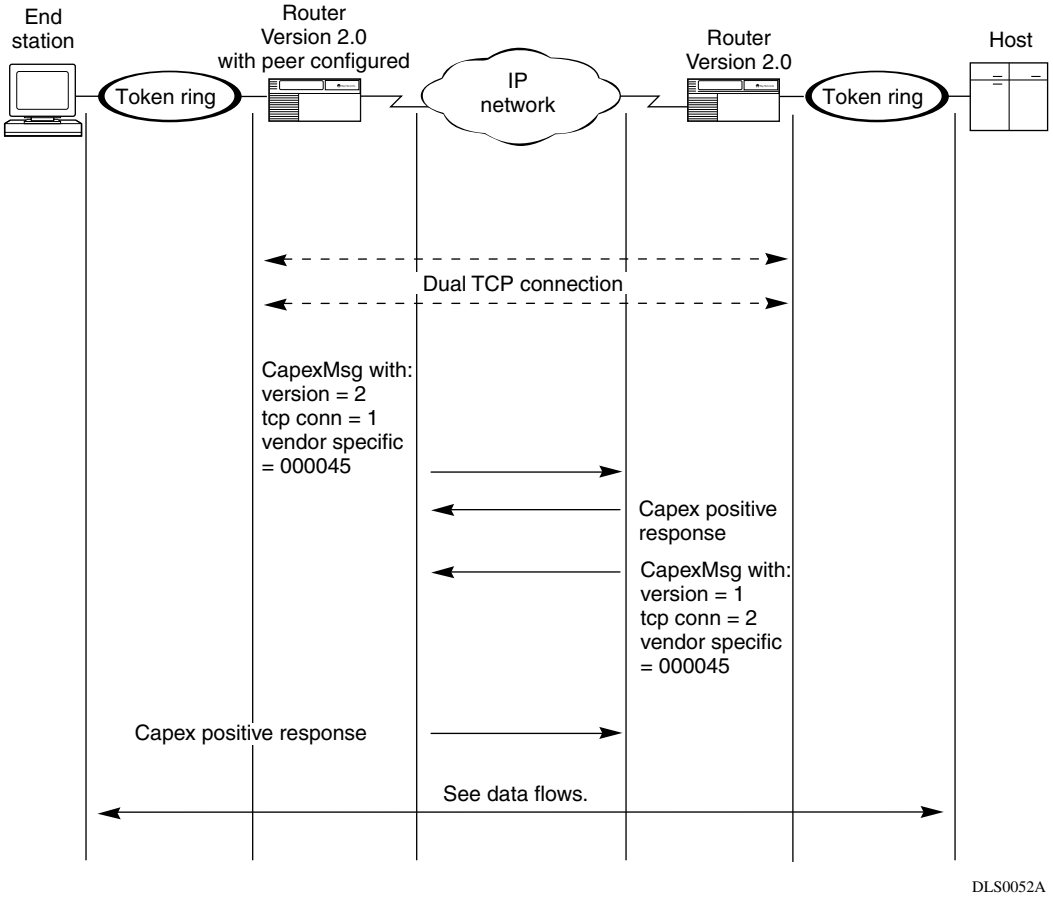
End station
Token ring
Router Version 2.0 with peer configured
IP network
Router Version 2.0
Token ring
Host
Dual TCP connection
CapexMsg with: version = 2 tcp conn = 1 vendor specific = 000045
Capex positive response
CapexMsg with: version = 1 tcp conn = 2 vendor specific = 000045
Capex positive response
See data flows.
DLS0052A

Figure C-12. Exchange Between Two Routers Running DLSw Version 2.0 (TCP Peer Configured as Remote Router in Fallback Mode on One Router)

Figure C-13 shows a primary SDLC to secondary SDLC PU 2.0 data flow between two Nortel Networks routers using DLSw single switch connected using SNA/frame relay RFC 1490. Figure C-14 shows a primary SDLC to LLC2 PU 2.0 data flow between Nortel Networks routers using DLSw single switch connected using SNA/Frame Relay RFC 1490.

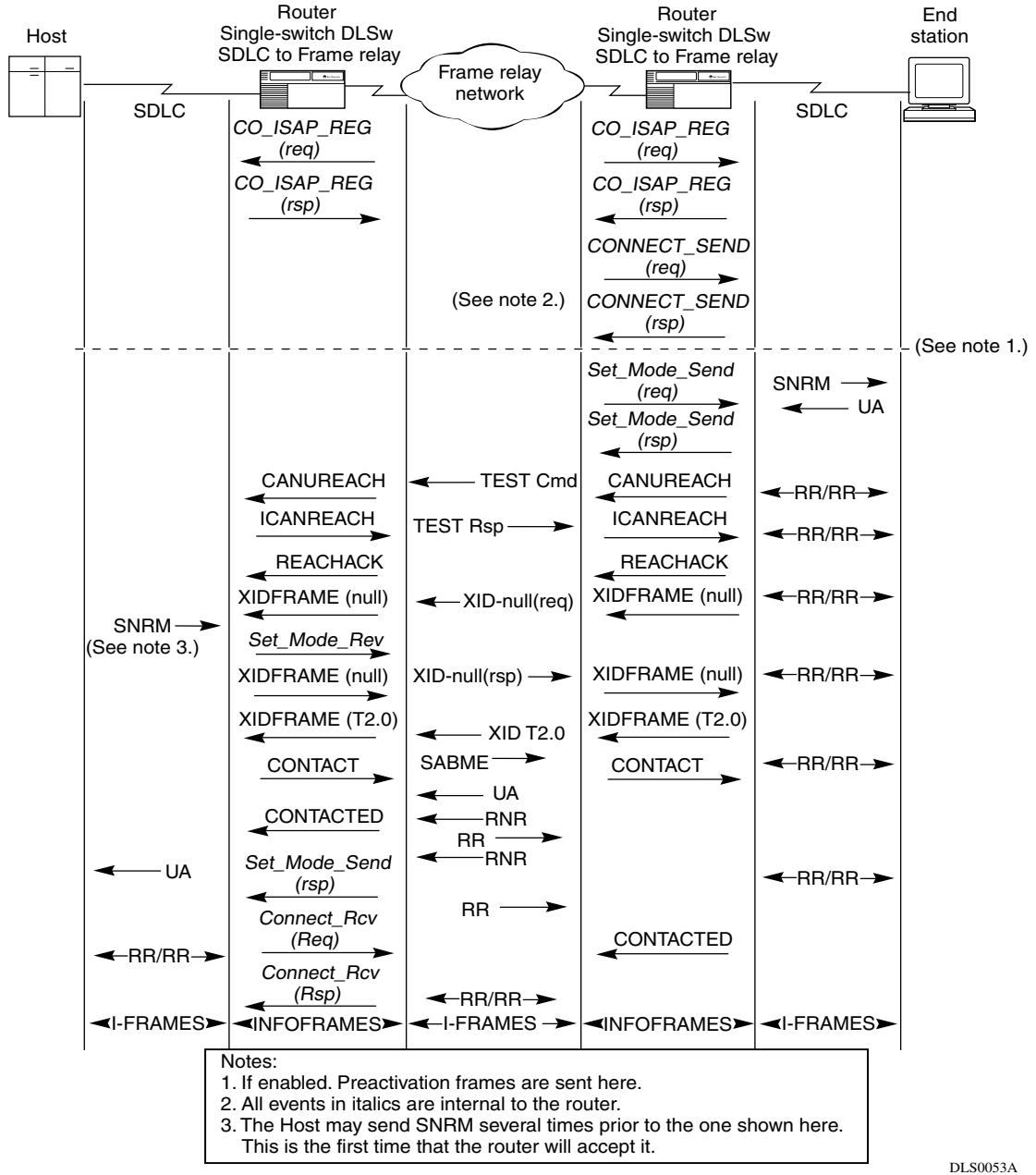

Figure C-13. Primary to Secondary SDLC Data Flow Using Single-Switch SNA/Frame Relay

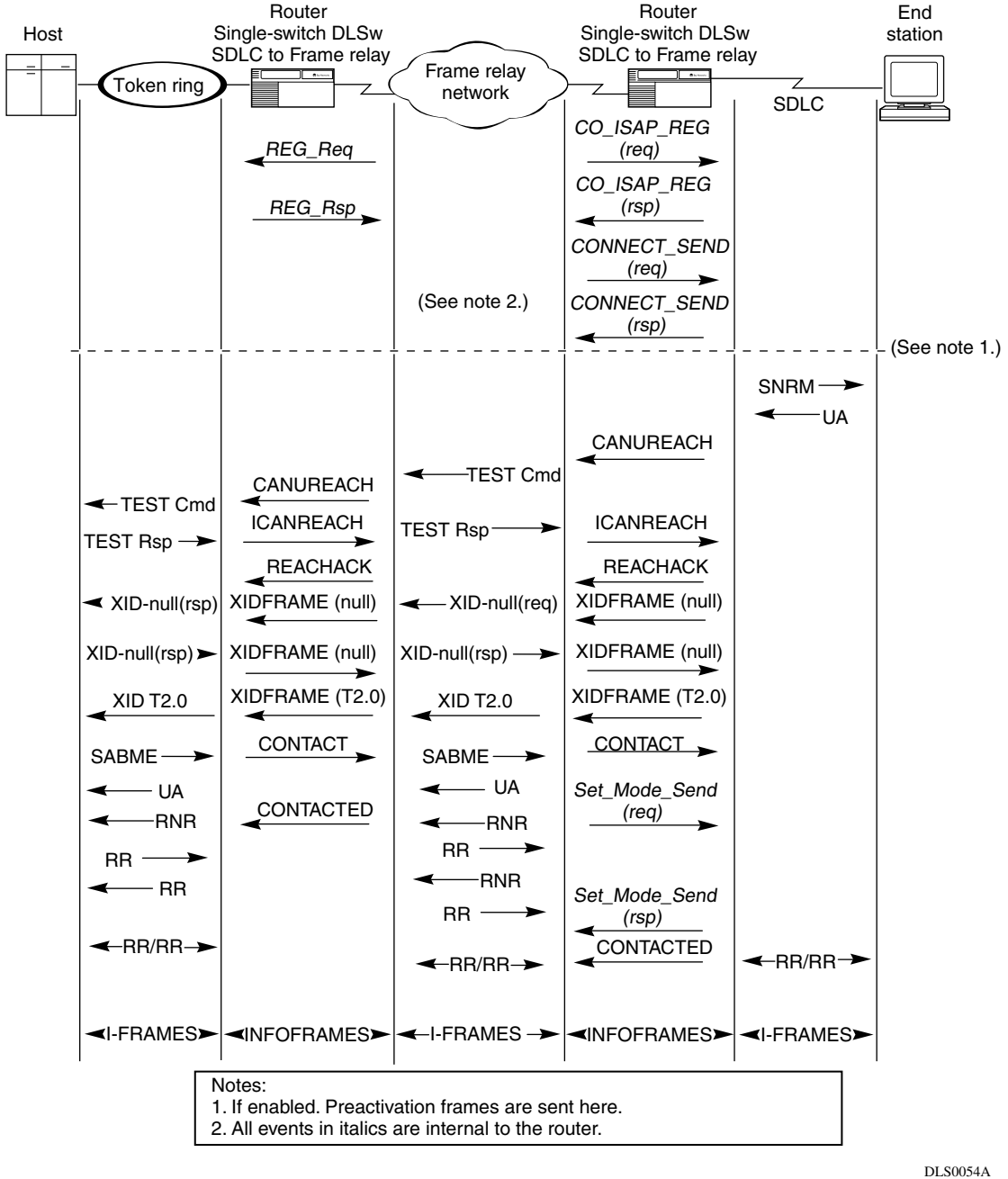

Figure C-14. Primary SDLC to LLC2 Data Flow Using Single-Switch SNA/Frame Relay

Appendix D
Monitoring DLSw Using the BCC show Commands

This appendix describes how to use the BCC **show** commands to obtain DLSw data from the management information base (MIB). The type and amount of data displayed depend on the specific DLSw information you want to view. This appendix includes descriptions of the following **show** commands:

Command	Page
show dlsw all	D-2
show dlsw connections	D-2
show dlsw global	D-3
show dlsw interfaces	D-6
show dlsw local-devices	D-7
show dlsw mac-peers	D-8
show dlsw multicast-ip	D-9
show dlsw netbios-peers	D-10
show dlsw peers	D-11
show dlsw saps	D-12
show dlsw slots	D-13
show dlsw summary	D-13

show dlsw all

The **show dlsw all** command shows all information that you can display using the **show dlsw global**, **show dlsw interfaces**, **show dlsw mac-peers**, **show dlsw multicast-ip**, **show dlsw netbios-peers**, **show dlsw peers**, **show dlsw saps**, **show dlsw slots**, and **show dlsw local-devices** commands**.**

This command does not use command filters or arguments.

See the following sections for information included in the output.

show dlsw connections

The **show dlsw connections** command shows a list of DLSw connections.

This command allows the following command filters and arguments:

-circuit *<circuit-name>*	Shows the DLSw connection that matches the specified circuit.
-dest-mac *<mac-addr>*	Shows DLSw connections that match the specified destination MAC address.
-src-mac *<mac-addr>*	Shows DLSw connections that match the specified source MAC address.
-remote-ip *<ip-addr>*	Shows DLSw connections that match the specified remote IP address.
-local-ip *<ip-addr>*	Shows DLSw connections that match the specified local IP address.

The output for **show dlsw connections** includes the following information:

Circuits	Circuit name assigned to the interface.
Status	State of the connection: connected, disconnected.
Destination MAC/Source MAC	Destination and source MAC addresses.
Remote IP/local IP	Remote IP and local IP addresses.
DSAP/SSAP	Destination SAP address and Source SAP address.
TX/RX IFrames	Information frames.
TX/RX RNRs	Receiver Not Ready PDUs. Notifies the destination LLC that the originating LLC is busy.
IDBLK/IDNUM	Block number and ID number. Numbers must match the host's IDBLOCK and IDNUM values.

show dlsw global

The **show dlsw global** command displays the values for the DLSw global parameters.

This command supports the following options:

basic	Shows basic global information about DLSw.
advanced	Shows advanced global information about DLSw.

This command does not use command filters or arguments.

The output for **show dlsw global basic** includes the following information:

State	State of the DLSw service: up, down, init (initializing), disabled, or absent.
Virtual Ring ID	Standard ring number that SRB uses to identify traffic that is placed on the SRB LAN by DLSw.
RFC Type	RFC implementation to run on the router.
Unconfigured Peers	Accept or reject TCP sessions with Nortel Networks or other DLSw peers not defined in the peer table.

The output for **show dlsw global advanced** includes the following information:

State	State of the DLSw service: up, down, init (initializing), disabled, or absent.
Total Circuits	Total number of circuits on the router running DLSw.
Virtual Ring ID	Standard ring number that SRB uses to identify traffic that DLSw places on the SRB LAN.
Virtual Ring MTU	MTU size for frames sent from local LAN-attached systems to systems on remote LANs.
Internal LAN ID	Source routing internal LAN ID.
Bridge ID	Source routing base bridge number.
TCP Window Size	Size, in bytes, of the windows used for the DLSw TCP connections.
Maximum Slot Sessions	Maximum number of LLC2 sessions to support per slot.
MAC Age Time	Time, in seconds, before inactive MAC addresses are aged out of the cache.
NetBIOS Age Time	Time, in seconds, before inactive NetBIOS names are aged out of the cache.
RFC Type	RFC implementation to run on the router: rfc1434, rfc1795, v20unicast, or rfc2166.
Unconfigured Peers	Accept or reject TCP sessions with Nortel Networks or other DLSw peers not defined in the peer table.
Debug Level 1	Whether all or no debug level 1 messages are logged: all or none.

Debug Level 2	Whether all, no, or specific debug level 2 messages are logged. Specific messages are for subfunctional elements (for example, general-info-1, backup-peer-events).
TCP Inactivity Time	Time, in seconds, before terminating an inactive TCP connection.
TCP Inactivity Method	Type of connection that will cause a TCP connection to terminate when the TCP inactivity time expires: circuits, data, or never.
WAN Keepalive Time	Frequency, in seconds, with which the router sends a signal to the peer router to check that the peer router is working correctly and can receive messages.
Package Maximum Size	Maximum size of frame to send over the WAN.
Package Timeout	Time interval, in milliseconds, to delay a package before sending it to TCP.
Package Threshold	Percentage of the DLSw TCP window that must be in use if DLSw is to delay sending a package.
Multislot Broadcasts	Whether broadcasting of received CANUREACH frames over DLSw slots is enabled or disabled.
Initial Pacing Window	Initial number of received data frames that the local DLSw router permits during an established connection with another DLSw router running RFC 1795, DLSw Version 2, or RFC 2166.
NetBIOS Alive Filter	Whether the NetBIOS session alive frame transmissions are enabled or disabled.
Keepalive Retry Timer	Maximum time, in seconds, between successive retransmissions of keepalive packets.
Keepalive Retries	Number of times TCP attempts to establish or maintain a connection.
SNA Fallback Attempts	Maximum number of attempts the local router should make when establishing a connection with a remote DLSw peer before reverting to earlier DLSw RFCs.
NetBIOS Fallback Time	Period of time before a peer router with a Transport Type of Unknown reverts to RFC 1795 protocols when a NetBIOS name query from the router goes unacknowledged.
Multislot DLC Broadcasts	Whether broadcast messages inbound from the DLC should be sent to all active DLSw slots.

show dlsw interfaces

The **show dlsw interfaces** command displays general information about DLSw interfaces, including the current operational status and interface type.

This command allows the following command filters and arguments:

-circuit *<circuit-name>*	Shows interface information for the specified circuit name only.
-enabled	Shows interface information for enabled circuits.
-disabled	Shows interface information for disabled circuits.

The output includes the following information:

Circuit Name	Circuit name assigned to the interface.
State	State of the DLSw service: up, down, init (initializing), disabled, or absent.
Bridge ID	Bridge's bridge ID, which identifies the Nortel Networks source routing bridges in the network.
LAN ID	Bridge's internal LAN ID, which is unique among all other internal LAN IDs, group LAN IDs, and ring IDs in the network.
DLC Type	Data link connection type. For example, LLC SRB, LLC Encaps, or SDLC.

show dlsw local-devices

The **show dlsw local-devices** command shows a list of configured local devices with general information.

The command allows the following command filter and argument:

-circuit *<circuit-name>*	Shows local device information for the specified circuit name only.

The output includes the following information:

Circuit Name	Circuit name assigned to the interface.
Addr	Address of the link station.
State	State of the DLSw service: up, down, init (initializing), disabled, or absent.
Destination MAC/Source MAC	Destination and source MAC addresses.
DSAP/SSAP	Destination SAP address and Source SAP address.
PU-Type	Type of XID-sending node: T1.0, T2.0, T2.1, or T4
ID-Block	Block number. Number must match the host's IDBLOCK value.
ID-Num	ID number. Number must match the host's IDNUM value.

show dlsw mac-peers

The **show dlsw mac-peers** command displays a list of configured MAC peers.

This command allows the following command filters and arguments:

-address *<mac-addr>*	Shows the MAC peer information for the specified MAC address.
-peer *<ip-addr>*	Shows the MAC peer information for the specified peer IP address.

The output includes the following information:

Destination MAC Address	MAC address associated with the SNA system or application that you reach using DLSw services.
Remote IP Address	IP address of a remote DLSw peer that can reach the remote SNA system or application.

show dlsw multicast-ip

The **show dlsw multicast-ip** command shows a list of configured multicast IP addresses.

This command supports the following option:

backup	Shows a list of configured backup peers.

The **show dlsw multicast-ip backup** command allows the following command filter and argument:

-ip-addr *<ip-addr>*	Shows a specific backup peer based on the given IP address.

The **show dlsw multicast-ip** command allows the following command filter and argument:

-ip-addr *<ip-addr>*	Shows the multicast-IP information for the specified multicast IP address.

The output for **show dlsw multicast-ip** includes the following information:

IP Address	Multicast IP address for an entry.
State	State of multicasting: active or inactive.
Backup Peer	IP address of a backup DLSw peer.
Slots	Slots to receive and transmit multicast data.

The output for **show dlsw multicast-ip backup** includes the following information:

IP Address	Multicast IP address for an entry.
Up Time	Maximum time a backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer.
Hold Down Time	Time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer.
Primary Peer	IP address of the primary peer.
Backup Type	Type of DLSw backup peer: multicast, v20udp, v20unknown, v20tcp, or tcp1795.

show dlsw netbios-peers

The **show dlsw netbios-peers** command displays a list of configured NetBIOS peers.

This command allows the following command filters and arguments:

-name *<netbios-name>*	Shows the NetBIOS peer information for the specified NetBIOS name.
-peer *<peer-ip-addr>*	Shows the NetBIOS peer information for the specified peer IP address.

The output includes the following information:

Remote Station Name	Name of the remote NetBIOS client/server or application to reach using DLSw services.
Remote IP Address	IP address of the DLSw peer that can reach the remote NetBIOS client/server or application.

show dlsw peers

The **show dlsw peers** command shows a list of configured remote peers and their states.

This command supports the following option:

backup	Shows a list of configured backup peers.

The **show dlsw peers backup** command allows the following command filter and argument:

-ip-addr *<ip-addr>*	Shows a specific backup peer based on the given IP address.

The **show dlsw peers** command allows the following command filters and argument:

-peer *<peer-ip-addr>*	Shows the peer information for the specified peer IP address.
-down	Shows a list of configured peers whose state is down.

The output for **show dlsw peers** includes the following information:

IP Address	IP address of a remote DLSw peer.
State	State of the remote DLSw peer: Up or Down.
Peer Type Capability	Type of peer: RFC 1434, RFC 1795, Unknown, V2.0 Unicast, RFC 2166, Local.
Transport Type	Transport capability at the remote peer: TCP, UDP, or Unknown.
Backup Peer	IP address of the backup peer.

The output for **show dlsw peers backup** includes the following:

IP Address	IP address of a remote DLSw peer.
Up Time	Maximum time a backup peer can remain connected to the local DLSw peer.
Hold Down Time	Time to wait (in seconds) after the primary peer is declared unreachable before the local router initiates a TCP connection to the backup peer.
Primary Peer	IP address of the primary peer.
Backup Type	Type of DLSw backup peer: multicast, v20udp, v20unknown, v20tcp, or tcp1795.

show dlsw saps

The **show dlsw saps** command shows a list of configured SAPs.

This command does not use command filters or arguments.

The output includes the following information:

SAP	Destination SAP address associated with a communication subsystem on a remote device.
Credit	Maximum number of unacknowledged LLC2 frames that the local end-station DLSw switch accepts for forwarding to the remote end station.

show dlsw slots

The **show dlsw slots** command shows the list of slots that are running DLSw and general information about those slots.

This command does not use command filters or arguments.

The output includes the following information:

Slot	Number of the slot on the router running DLSw.
Slot IP Address	IP address of the slot.
Current Memory (KB)	Current amount of memory on the slot.
Current Num Sessions	Current number of DLSw sessions running on the slot.
Highest Num Sessions	Highest number of DLSw sessions that can be run on the slot.

show dlsw summary

The **show dlsw summary** command displays general information about DLSw interfaces, including status, interface/circuit information, and states.

This command does not use command filters or arguments.

The output includes the following information:

DLSw State	State of global DLSw: up or down.
Total Circuits	Total number of circuits on the router running DLSw.
Circuits	List of circuits running DLSw.
State	State of the DLSw service on that interface: up, down, init (initializing), disabled, or absent.

Index

A

address
  learning capabilities, 4-33, 4-35
  MAC, 4-33
  peer IP, 4-18, 4-35, A-59, A-60

B

Backup Config parameter, A-48, A-75
Backup End Time parameter, A-50, A-78
Backup Hold Down Time parameter, A-49, A-77
Backup Incoming Bandwidth parameter, A-57
Backup Incoming Burst Size parameters, A-57
Backup IP Address parameter, A-48, A-75
Backup Max Up Time parameter, A-49, A-76
Backup Outgoing Bandwidth parameter, A-56
Backup Outgoing Burst Size parameter, A-57
Backup Peer Type parameter, A-76
backup peers, 1-43, 4-19
Backup Start Time parameter, A-50, A-77
BAN, 1-31
BAN2 termination
  BAN2 Termination Support parameter, A-25
  configuring, 4-63
  description of, 1-34
boundary function, DLSw/APPN, 1-36
Boundary Network Node (BNN), 1-30
  PVC support, 1-30
  SVC support, 1-30
bridging services
  source routing, 2-6
  translation bridge, 2-7
  translation bridge on an SRB circuit, 2-5
  transparent bridge, 2-6
broadcast peers, 4-19

C

Canureach Retries parameter, A-38
Canureach Retries2 parameter, A-39
Canureach Timer parameter, A-37
Canureach Timer2 parameter, A-38
Circuit Number parameter, A-70
configuration objects for SDLC operation, 4-25
congestion control, DLSw prioritization, 2-20
conventions, text, xx
customer support, xxv

D

Default Bandwidths parameter, A-89
Default MAC Peer IP Address parameter, A-68
default MAC peer IP entries
  adding, A-65
default MAC peer IP table parameters
  Default MAC Peer IP Address, A-68
  MAC Address, A-66
  MAC Peer IP Address, A-67
Default NetBIOS Peer IP Address parameter, A-65
default NetBIOS peer IP entries
  adding, A-62
default NetBIOS peer IP parameters
  NetBIOS Name, A-63
  NetBIOS Peer IP Address, A-64, A-65

dequeuing
algorithms, weighted dequeuing, 2-17
DLSw prioritization, 2-17
Destination (Host) MAC (hex) parameter, A-36
Destination (Host) SAP (hex) parameter, A-36
Device Activation Seq parameter, A-42
DLSw
bridging services, transparent bridge, 2-6
communication over TCP/IP, 1-16
media support for, 1-3
networking overview, 1-2
peers, defining in a TCP/IP network, 4-17
protocol prioritization, 1-45
SDLC media support, 1-3
single- and dual-switch services, 1-11
DLSw IP Virtual Ring parameter, A-14
DLSw Mode parameter, A-28, A-30
DLSw NetBIOS Support parameter, A-6
DLSw packaging, 2-13
DLSw Peer IP Address (add only) parameter, A-6
DLSw Reject Unconfigured Peers, A-5
DLSw RFC Version parameter, A-4, A-18
DLSw RSVP Support parameter, A-6
DLSw Slot IP Address parameter, A-8
DLSw Virtual Ring ID (hex) parameter, A-5
dual-switch services, 1-11

E

Enable parameter, A-27, A-71
Enable XID PassThru parameter, A-41
Ethernet/802.3, multiple DLSw peers serving a LAN, 2-10

F

flow control
configuration parameters for, 4-7, A-40
LLC, 2-12
TCP, 2-13
frame relay support, 1-28

G

global parameters
Ban2 Termination Support, A-25
DLSw IP Virtual Ring, A-14
DLSw RFC Version, A-18
DLSw Virtual Ring ID, A-5
Enable, A-12
Initial Pacing Window, A-20
KeepAlive Retries, A-22
KeepAlive Retry Timer, A-22
KeepAlive Time, A-21
MAC Address Translation Support, A-25
MAC Cache Age, A-17
Maximum Package Size, A-18
Multilslot Broadcasts, A-20
NetBIOS Fallback Time, A-23
NetBIOS Session Alive Filter, A-21
Packaging Threshold, A-19
Packaging Timeout, A-19
Reject Unconfigured Peers, A-17
SNA Fallback Attempts, A-23
TCP Inact Method, A-24
TCP Inact Time, A-24
TCP Window Size, A-13
Virtual Ring MTU, A-16

I

IDBLOCK parameter, A-32
IDNUM parameter, A-34
Incoming Bandwidth parameter, A-53, A-80
Incoming Burst Size parameter, A-53, A-81
Initial Pacing Window parameter, A-20
interface parameters
Enable, A-27
IP Address parameter, A-8, A-59, A-60
IP multicast parameters
Backup Config, A-75
Backup End Time (hhmm), A-78
Backup Hold Down Time (sec), A-77
Backup IP Address, A-75
Backup Max Up Time, A-76
Backup Peer Type, A-76
Backup Start Time (hhmm), A-77

Multicast IP Address, A-73
Slot, A-73

K

KeepAlive Retries parameter, A-22
KeepAlive Retry Timer parameter, A-22
KeepAlive Time parameter, A-21

L

learning capabilities, 4-33
Link Station Address (hex) parameter, A-30
Link Station Retries parameter, A-40
link station roles, 1-23
Link Station Timer parameter, A-39
LLC conversion, 1-22
LLC flow control, 2-12
LLC2 media support, 1-3
local acknowledgment, 1-27
local devices parameters
Canureach Retries, A-38
Canureach Retries2, A-39
Canureach Timer, A-37
Canureach Timer2, A-38
Destination (Host) MAC (hex), A-36
Destination (Host) SAP (hex), A-36
Device Activation Seq, A-42
DLSw Mode, A-28, A-30
Enable XID PassThru, A-41
Link Station Retries, A-40
Link Station Timer, A-39
MAXDATA, A-37
MAXOUT, A-37
PU IDBLOCK, A-32
PU IDNUM, A-34
PU Name parameter, A-31
PU Type, A-31
SDLC Receive Credit, A-40
SDLC Transmit Credit, A-41
Source (Virtual) MAC (hex), A-35
Source (Virtual) SAP (hex), A-36
XID Format, A-35
local devices, adding, 3-12

M

MAC Address parameter, A-66
MAC address translation
configuring, 4-59
description of, 1-31
parameters
MAC Address Translation Support, A-25
Original Destination MAC Address, A-84
Translated Destination MAC Address, A-85, A-86
MAC Address Translation Support parameter, A-25
MAC Cache Age parameter, A-17
MAC Peer IP Address parameter, A-67
Max Queue Buffers for Unconfig Peers parameter, A-88
Max Queue Buffers parameter, A-46, A-91
Max Queue Size for Unconfig Peers parameter, A-88
Max Queue Size parameter, A-46, A-91
Max Slot Sessions parameter, 2-11, A-15
MAXDATA parameter, A-37
Maximum Package Size parameter, A-18
MAXOUT parameter, A-37
memory requirements, 2-10
Multicast IP Address parameter, A-73, A-75
Multicast IP Slots parameter, A-75
multiple DLSw peers, 2-10
Multislot Broadcasts parameter, A-20

N

NetBIOS Cache Age parameter, A-17
NetBIOS Fallback Time parameter, A-23
NetBIOS Name parameter, A-63
NetBIOS Peer IP Address parameter, A-64
NetBIOS Session Alive Filter parameter, A-21
NetBIOS, sample template, 4-69
Non-Peak End Time parameter, A-55, A-83
Non-Peak Incoming Bandwidth parameter, A-54, A-82

Non-Peak Incoming Burst Size parameter, A-55
RSVP global parameters
Non-Peak Incoming Burst Size, A-82
Non-Peak Outgoing Bandwidth parameter, A-54, A-81
Non-Peak Outgoing Burst Size parameter, A-54
RSVP globla parameters
Non-Peak Outgiong Burst Size, A-81
Non-Peak Start Time parameter, A-55, A-82
Non-Peak Starting Days parameter, A-56, A-83

O

Original Destination MAC Address parameter, A-84
OSA-2 ATM adapter support, 1-20
Outgoing Bandwidth parameter, A-52, A-80
Outgoing Burst Size parameter, A-53, A-80

P

packaging
configuring, A-18
multiple DLSw frames, 2-13
Packaging Threshold parameter, A-19
Packaging Timeout parameter, A-19
parallel data paths
in SRB topology, 2-10
using, 2-9
peer IP address, 4-17
Peer IP Address parameter, A-6, A-44
peer types
TCP, 4-18
UDP, 4-18
Unknown, 4-18
peers
learning mechanism, 4-33
multiple, 2-10
performance and DLSw packaging, 2-13
PP for Unconfigured Peers parameter, A-87
primary link stations, 1-23
primary SDLC operations, 1-24
prioritization
Max Queue Size parameter, A-46, A-91
Protocol Priority parameter, A-46, A-91
queue depth, 2-20
priority queues. *See* queues, priority
product support, xxv
protocol prioritization
advantages of, 2-14
clipped packets, 2-20
Default Queue Bandwidths parameter, A-89
definition of, 2-14
description of, 2-14
DLSw
dequeuing, 2-17
Max Queue Buffers for Unconfig Peers parameter, A-88
Max Queue Buffers parameter, A-46, A-91
Max Queue Size for Unconfig Peers parameter, A-88
PP for Unconfigured Peers parameter, A-87
Protocol Priority parameter, A-87
queue depth, 2-20
tuning, 2-20
protocol prioritization, overview, 1-45
Protocol Priority parameter, A-46, A-87, A-91
PU 1.0, 1-18
PU 2.0, 1-18
PU 2.1, 1-18
PU 4, 1-18
PU 5, 1-20
PU Name parameter, A-31
PU Type parameter, A-31
publications
hard copy, xxiv
related, xxiv
PVC Support, 1-30

Q

Queue Bandwidth Percent parameter, A-93
queue depth, DLSw protocol prioritization, 2-20
Queue Number parameter, A-92
queues, overview, 2-14

queues, priority
configuring default, 4-65
enqueuing, 2-16

R

Reject Unconfigured Peers parameter, A-17
remote NetBIOS/SNA systems, 4-33
RFC 1490 frame relay standard, 1-29
RFC 1795 support, 1-3
RFC 2166 multicast support, 1-6
RSVP global parameters
DLSw RSVP Support, A-6
Incoming Bandwidth, A-80
Incoming Burst Size, A-81
Non-Peak End Time, A-83
Non-Peak Incoming Bandwidth, A-82
Non-Peak Outgoing Bandwidth, A-81
Non-Peak Start Time, A-82
Non-Peak Starting Days, A-83
Outgoing Bandwidth, A-80
Outgoing Burst Size, A-80
RSVP Mode parameter, A-52
RSVP peer parameters
Backup Incoming Bandwidth, A-57
Backup Incoming Burst Size, A-57
Backup Outgoing Bandwidth, A-56
Backup Outgoing Burst Size, A-57
Incoming Bandwidth, A-53
Incoming Burst Size, A-53
Non-Peak End Time, A-55
Non-Peak Incoming Bandwidth, A-54
Non-Peak Incoming Burst Size, A-55
Non-Peak Outgoing Bandwidth, A-54
Non-Peak Outgoing Burst Size, A-54
Non-Peak Start Time, A-55
Non-Peak Starting Days, A-56
Outgoing Bandwidth, A-52
Outgoing Burst Size, A-53
RSVP Mode, A-52
RSVP Slots, A-52
RSVP Slots parameter, A-52

S

SAP address
in explorer frames, 2-5
in TEST frames, 2-6
SAP parameter, A-61
SAP Table parameters
SAP, A-61
SAP Window, A-62
SAP Window parameter, A-62
SAP window, purpose of, 2-12
SAPs, 4-4
SDLC
conversion, 1-23
topologies, 1-23
SDLC Receive Credit parameter, A-40
SDLC Transmit Credit parameter, A-41
secondary link stations, 1-23
secondary SDLC
operations, 1-25
show commands, D-1
single-switch SDLC conversion, 1-23
single-switch services, 1-11
Slot IP Table parameters
IP Address, A-59, A-60
Slot, A-58
Slot Number parameter, A-69, A-70
Slot parameter, A-58, A-73
SNA Fallback Attempts parameter, A-23
SNA, sample template, 4-69, 4-70
Source (Virtual) MAC (hex) parameter, A-35
Source (Virtual) SAP (hex) parameter, A-36
SR Bridge ID parameter, A-7
SR Interface Ring ID parameter, A-9
SR Internal LAN ID parameter, A-7
SRB and DLSw, 2-2
subsystems and DLSw, 2-2
support, Nortel Networks, xxv
SVC support, 1-30, 1-31
synchronous pass-through, 1-27

T

TCP Inact Method parameter, A-24
TCP Inact Time parameter, A-24
TCP Window Size parameter, A-13
TCP/IP, DLSw communications over, 1-16
technical publications, xxiv
technical support, xxv
Technician Interface, A-2
template.flt file
  editing, 4-69
  sample, 4-69
TEST frames, 2-6
text conventions, xx
Token ring-to-Ethernet topology considerations, A-16
traffic filters
  DLSw and outbound, 1-44
  outbound
    DLSw priority/outbound filters, A-94
    media and protocols supported, 2-14
Translated Destination MAC Address parameter, A-85, A-86
translation bridge support, 2-7
transparent bridge support, 2-6
Transport Type parameter, A-47

U

UDP explorer frames, 1-5, 4-19
unconfigured peers, 4-20

V

Virtual Ring MTU parameter, 2-4, A-16

W

weighted dequeuing algorithm, 2-18
window size, SAP, A-62

X

XID Format parameter, A-35